

SIGHT READING INTELLIGENCE

BIG

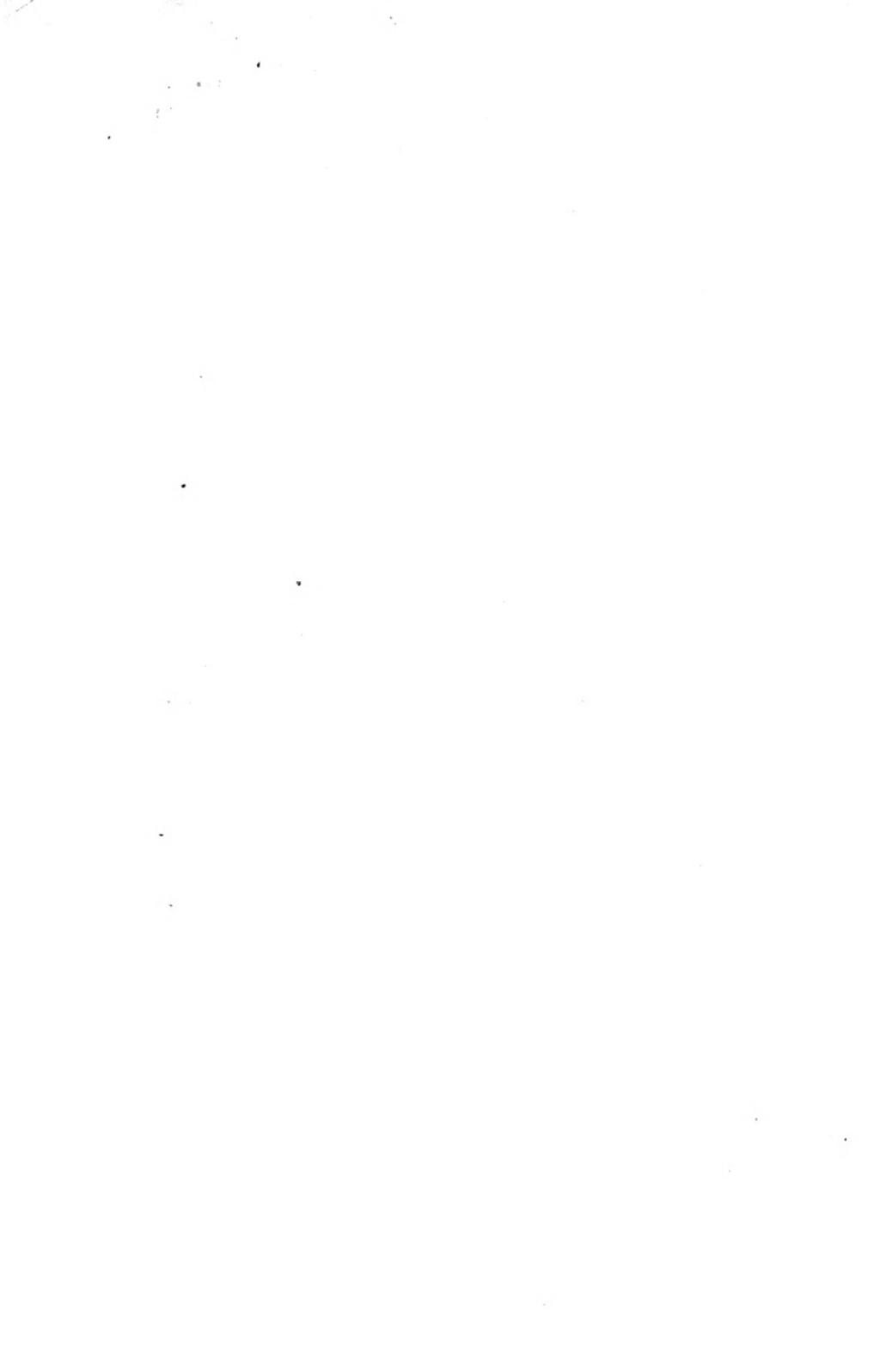
Boston University
College of Liberal Arts
Library

THE GIFT OF C.C. Lodge - Class of '78

December 1919

NO.

418.7
B47



SIGHT READING IN LATIN FOR THE SECOND YEAR

BY

HIRAM H. BICE

HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN, DE WITT CLINTON HIGH SCHOOL
NEW YORK CITY

BOSTON UNIVERSITY
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS
LIBRARY

GINN AND COMPANY
BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

COPYRIGHT, 1913, BY
HIRAM H. BICE

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

513.7

The Athenaeum Press
GINN AND COMPANY • PROPRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

PA

205

F13

PREFACE

The material for sight reading offered in this book may be used in two ways. Teachers who believe that the passage for translation should be placed before the pupil without preparation, will suggest for his use nothing more than the vocabulary of new words, the notes, and the rule of order accompanying each selection. Those who believe that some preparation should be made will find material suggested at the beginning of each exercise.

The grammatical references are to the common constructions found in the reading prescribed for the second year, and are illustrated in the selection which they introduce. The words which may be made the basis of a drill in inflections, as well as the words in the so-called "prescribed list," also occur in the passage. The latter are to be found in Professor Lodge's List. They include two classes: those which occur for the first time in Books III, IV, and V of the Gallic War, and those which have not occurred often or which may not have been met by the pupil in his reading of Books I and II up to the time when he sees the passage for sight work. The words of the first class are printed in heavy-faced type in the prescribed list, and in the text of the exercises when the lists are discontinued. The meanings should be given by the teacher. The rules relating to the arrangement of the words in the sentence are intended to guide the pupil in observing the grouping of words and their dependence.

The meaning of every word in the passage is given if not found in Lodge's List. Each exercise is complete in itself. Words are therefore repeated whenever necessary, even though they have appeared in previous exercises.

The book contains rather more matter than is included in Books III and IV of the Gallic War. The first thirty exercises are taken from Eutropius, Aulus Gellius, Pliny, Cicero, and Livy. In some cases needed modifications have been made in the Latin, especially in the Livy.

The other exercises are taken from Nepos's lives of Hannibal and Hamilcar, from Cæsar's Civil War, and from Books III to VII, inclusive, of the Gallic War. In every case the attempt has been made to have the Latin tell a complete episode or story in a series of exercises. Where chapters have been omitted, a résumé of the contents is given in English.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
SUGGESTIONS FOR READING AT SIGHT	vii
FORMATION OF WORDS	ix
NEW WORDS	xi
EUTROPIUS	I
AULUS GELLIUS	
A Boy in the Senate	12
Advice about the Use of Words	14
The Gratitude of a Lion	15
A Famous Horse	19
Scipio and the Bribe	20
How to make Buildings Fireproof	21
PLINY THE YOUNGER	
Choosing a Boys' School	23
A Haunted House	24
CICERO	
Two Strange Dreams	28
LIVY	
Stories of the Life of Hannibal	29
NEPOS	
Selections from the Lives:	
Hannibal	49
Hamilcar	62
CÆSAR	
Selections from the Civil War:	
Book I	66
Book II	73
Selections from the Gallic War:	
Book III	82
Book IV	102
Book V	118
Book VI	139
Book VII	143

SUGGESTIONS FOR READING AT SIGHT

To understand a Latin sentence three things must be known: the forms, the relations of the words to one another, and their meanings. Each one of these must be noted and remembered while the sentence is passing under the eye of the reader.

First, then, read each sentence through slowly and thoughtfully, aloud if possible, trying to decide, when each word is reached, what its form is or may be. Do not, when reading the sentence for the first or even for the second time, let the eye jump from place to place, but take each word as it comes. Often the next word will make plain the form of the one before it. Sometimes the form will be perfectly plain when the end of the sentence is reached. Sometimes a word may be in any one of several forms, and the first reading may not show which one it is.

After having read the sentence through in this way one or more times with the forms chiefly in mind, read it once more, trying to see rather how the words are related to one another. Of course it is not possible to avoid doing this to some extent when the sentence is read the first time, but put the attention strongly on this point now. The meanings of many of the words will naturally rise in the mind while this is being done, and will help to show the connection between the parts of the different phrases; for the other readings will have made it clear that the sentence contains a number of groups of words, perhaps prepositional phrases, perhaps nouns limited by an adjective or by a genitive or an ablative, or perhaps clauses of one kind or another. By omitting these mentally in the reading, when they are discovered, the simple, independent statement, which is the real backbone of the sentence, will be found. After this, another reading will usually show the relation which these groups have to one another and to the main statement.

If the structure is still not clear, the pupil should read the sentence again and again, following the same method, till the light comes. Sometimes the difficulty arises from an ignorance of some principle of syntax or an uncertainty about a form, which must be cleared up by reference to the grammar; or it may come from the hazy memory of the meaning of a word.

After all this the meaning of the whole sentence should be fairly certain, and it should not be a difficult matter to put it into English. If the meaning of a word has escaped the memory, leave a blank for this word in translating the sentence, and often the translation will show what meaning the unknown word must have.

It may seem that this requires much time and is a slow way of getting at the meaning. It is true that for a while this will be so. But the mind must be trained to grasp the meaning of the sentence in the order in which the Roman author developed it in his own mind, and in the order in which he put it in writing. The emphasis in a sentence is lost if the sentence is not read and interpreted in the order in which it is written. This is the only method that leads to accuracy and rapidity in understanding the language; for the Romans were particular about the placing of words, and the study of arrangement, therefore, is of the utmost importance.

THE FORMATION OF WORDS

Many Latin words are made from other Latin words by adding to the stem certain syllables called suffixes.

Those which should be taught to the pupil are given below.

tor. This suffix is added to verb stems or roots to show the doer or the agent of the action, as

imperātor = **imperā** (stem of **imperō**, command) + **tor** = one who commands, a commander.

victor = **vic** (root of **vincō**, conquer) + **tor** = one who conquers, a conqueror, a victor.

Observe the English equivalents of this suffix.

Occasionally the suffix appears as **sor**, as in **dēfēnsor**, for **dēfēndtor**.

Explain the formation of the following :

mercātor, **explōrātor**, **speculātor**, **gubernātor**, **adiūtor**.

iō, **tiō**, **tus**. These suffixes are added to verb stems or roots to form nouns which show an act or its result, as

legiō = **leg** (root of **legō**, choose, levy) + **iō** = the act or result of levying, a *legion*.

ōrātiō = **ōrā** (stem of **ōrō**, plead) + **tiō** = the act or result of pleading, a speech, *oration*.

conventus = **conven** (con, together, + **ven**, root of **veniō**, come) + **tus** = the act or the result of coming together or assembling, assembly, *convention*.

Observe the English equivalents of these suffixes.

Occasionally the suffix **tus** appears as **sus**, as in **cursus** (from **currō**) for **curtus**.

Explain the formation of the following :

coniūrātiō, **mūnitiō**, **dēditiō**, **oppugnātiō**, **nāvigātiō**, **obsidiō**, **dēfēnsiō**, **occāsus**, **discessus**, **mōtus**.

ia, tia, tās, tūs, tūdō. These suffixes are added to the stems of adjectives or nouns to form nouns.

The suffixes **ia, tia, tās, tūdō**, added to adjective stems, form abstract nouns denoting quality, as

potentia = **potent** (stem of **potēns**, able, from **possum**) + **ia** = *ability*.

iūstitia = **iūsti** (weakened stem of **iūstus**, fair, just) + **tia** = *fairness, justice*.

celeritās = **celeri** (stem of **celer**, swift) + **tās** = *swiftness*.

magnitūdō = **magni** (weakened stem of **magnus**, great) + **tūdō** = *greatness, magnitude*.

Observe the English equivalents of these suffixes.

Explain the formation of the following :

memoria, grātia, audācia, diligentia, sententia, amīcitia, nōbilitās, libertās, altitūdō, fortitūdō, multitūdō.

The suffixes **ia, tās, tūs**, added to noun stems, form nouns denoting a condition or a characteristic, as

militia = **milit** (stem of **miles**, soldier) + **ia** = *military service*.

cīvitās = **cīvi** (stem of **cīvis**, citizen) + **tās** = *citizenship*.

servitūs = **servi** (weakened stem of **servus**, slave) + **tūs** = *slavery, servitude*.

Observe the English equivalents of these suffixes.

Explain the formation of the following :

victōria, auctōritās, tempestās, virtūs, senectūs.

The meanings of words are often changed by prefixing syllables, usually prepositions, which have their original force as adverbs. The most common meanings of the following should be taught to the pupil :

ab (ā), **ad**, **ante**, **circum**, **con**, **dē**, **dis**-(dī-), **ex** (ē), **in**, **in-**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **prae**, **prō**, **re**(d)-, **sub**, **trāns**.

Determine the meaning of the prefix in the following :

absum, **āvertō**, **addūcō**, **advertō**, **antepōnō**, **antecēdō**, **circumveniō**, **circum-**
sistō, **conveniō**, **cōferō**, **dēcīō**, **dēcurrō**, **dispōnō**, **dīmittō**, **ēnūntiō**,
expellō, **instō**, **īsequor**, **incrēdibilis**, **inermis**, **intercēdō**, **interpōnō**,
oppugnō, **occurrō**, **perdūcō**, **perspiciō**, **praestō**, **praemittō**, **prōiciō**,
prōcēdō, **respiciō**, **renovō**, **redeō**, **suscipiō**, **trānseō**, **trādūcō**.

NEW WORDS

The following list includes such words of Caesar, in Professor Lodge's Vocabulary for High School Latin, as do not occur in Books I and II of the Gallic War. With each is given the page and line where it first appears in this book. The meaning should be fixed in mind at the time when the word is first met.

PAGE	LINE	PAGE	LINE	PAGE	LINE
adimō . . .	36 18	cōnsector . . .	95 9	mare . . .	3 12
aedificō . . .	4 2	cōnstō . . .	46 16	māteria . . .	69 5
aestus . . .	89 9	coorior . . .	33 5	mōlēs . . .	90 4
alacer . . .	99 14	corōna . . .	56 2	mollis . . .	20 3
aliquot . . .	34 13	cuncitor . . .	46 1	mōtus . . .	113 14
ancora . . .	81 14	dēdecus . . .	116 2	nauta . . .	124 6
appellō (3) .	74 3	dēfīgō . . .	110 17	nāvigātiō .	122 6
aptus . . .	92 3	dēsiliō . . .	103 7	nāvigō . . .	28 4
aqua . . .	31 7	distō . . .	111 1	noceō . . .	62 5
aquila . . .	115 9	distribuō . . .	146 1	nōscō . . .	114 9
āridus . . .	114 8	ēvādō . . .	11 4	obsidiō . . .	33 1
avis . . .	106 9	ēveniō . . .	38 10	occāsiō . . .	62 6
bīnī . . .	56 12	ēvocō . . .	67 1	octingentī .	38 12
bis . . .	81 2	ferreus . . .	70 13	onerārius .	69 4
caedō . . .	69 12	flūctus . . .	91 4	paenitet . . .	105 9
callidus . . .	58 3	frūstrā . . .	86 5	parum . . .	69 5
carō . . .	127 7	fūnis . . .	91 8	pecus . . .	44 9
cautēs . . .	92 9	gubernātōr .	72 5	peragō . . .	118 13
certāmen . . .	32 8	hiems . . .	102 1	pergō . . .	98 8
cibus . . .	16 4	humilis . . .	77 4	plānus . . .	14 3
clam . . .	57 3	immittō . . .	19 5	portus . . .	68 11
classis . . .	62 9	īnsula . . .	62 10	praeda . . .	31 5
cōfestim .	145 2	lac . . .	102 14	prōnūntiō .	77 28
cōnsendō .	28 3	litus . . .	113 8	prōnus . . .	110 20

	PAGE	LINE		PAGE	LINE		PAGE	LINE
puppis . .	91	4	rōstrum . .	92	4	ubīque . .	69	4
quamvīs . .	104	3	saeviō . .	92	7	ūndecim . .	144	7
quoad . .	72	6	sagitta . .	79	18	ūtilis . .	12	8
rārus . .	90	10	saucius . .	52	19	vallēs . .	83	1
reficiō . .	34	15	septem . .	66	5	vēlum . .	57	14
regō . .	91	12	septingentī 126	14		ventus . .	57	14
rēmus . .	92	2	septuāgintā 108	11		vēstīgium . .	77	24
renovō . .	43	14	tempestās . .	79	20			
rōbur . .	45	9	tū . . .	14	5			

SIGHT READING IN LATIN

EXERCISE I

Grammar: A. 305; 419; 423; 530; 531, 2; 549. B. 250, 1; 227; 230; 181; 282, 2; 286, 2. G. 614; 409; 393; 336; 630; 586. H. 396; 489; 486; 417; 589; 598.

Inflection: agō; mōns; ūnus; quī.

Order of words: the normal order of the sentence is: (1) subject; (2) modifiers of subject; (3) modifiers of verb; (4) verb.

Prescribed list:

imperium	ferē	tum	vīcit
īnitium	ēgit	nātiōnēs	rēgnī
fīlius	recēpit	commōtīs	per
cīvitāte	cōnsiliō	iniūriam	imperāvērunt
nōmine	propter		

HOW ROMULUS, THE FOUNDER OF ROME, HELPED THE CITY TO GROW

Imperium Rōmānum¹ ā Rōmulō īitīum habet, quī² Reae Silviae, Vestālis virginis,³ filius fuit. Is, octōdecim annōs⁴ nātus, urbem parvam in Palātīnō⁵ monte cōnstituit. Condītā cīvitāte, quam⁶ ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ferē ēgit.⁷ Multitūdinem finitīmōrum in cīvitātem⁸ recēpit, centum⁹ ex seniōribus lēgit, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem.¹⁰ Tum, cum¹¹ uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent, invitāvit¹² ad spectāculum¹³ lūdōrum vicinas urbīs Rōmae nātiōnēs, atque eārum¹⁴ virginēs rapuit. Commōtis bellīs propter raptārum¹⁵ iniūriam, multās vīcīnās nātiōnēs vīcit. Annō¹⁶

rēgnī trīcēsimō septimō ad deōs trānsisse¹⁷ crēdūtus est. Deinde Rōmae¹⁸ per quīnōs diēs senātōrēs imperāvērunt et hīs rēgnantibus¹⁹ annus ūnus complētus est. — EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, <i>be born</i>	vīcīnus, a, um, <i>neighboring (vicinity)</i>
urbs, urbīs, f., <i>city</i>	rāpiō, 3, uī, tus, <i>carry off</i>
condō, 3, didī, dītus, <i>found</i>	trīcēsimus, a, um, <i>thirtieth</i>
vocō, 1, <i>call (vocal)</i>	deus, ī, m., <i>god</i>
senex, senīs, <i>old</i>	crēdō, 3, didī, dītus, <i>believe</i>
uxor, ūris, f., <i>wife</i>	deinde, <i>then</i>
lūdus, ī, m., <i>game</i>	quīnī, <i>five each</i>

NOTES

¹ Rōmānum: adjective formed from the noun Rōma by the suffix ānus, *belonging to*. ² quī: in what respect does this pronoun agree with its antecedent? What word, then, is its antecedent? ³ Vestālis virginis: a priestess who kept the fire of Vesta. ⁴ octōdecim annōs: what do these words tell about nātus? ⁵ Palātinō: one of the seven hills of Rome. ⁶ quam: relative pronoun. ⁷ haec ferē ēgit: *he did about as follows*. ⁸ cīvitātem: this word and cīvitāte above refer to Rome. ⁹ centum: indeclinable. Senātōrēs below shows that virōs is understood with centum. ¹⁰ senectūtem: derive the meaning of this word by connecting it with the stem of senex. What does senātōrēs really mean? ¹¹ cum: causal. ¹² invītāvit: infer the meaning from the English derivative. ¹³ spectāculum: see note on invītāvit. ¹⁴ eārum: refers to nātiōnēs. ¹⁵ raptārūm: render by a demonstrative and a relative clause. ¹⁶ annō: compare this use of the word with that in annōs above. ¹⁷ trānsisse: trāns + eō. ¹⁸ Rōmae: locative. ¹⁹ rēgnantibus: from rēgnō. Think of rēgnūm and regō.

This passage contains three examples of the ablative absolute. By what kind of clause should each be translated?

EXERCISE II

Grammar: A. 282; 286; 343; 362; 370; 419. B. 169. I: 233, 3; 234; 198; 195; 187, I, III; 227. G. 320; 289; 362; 345; 347; 409. H. 393; 394; 440, 1; 424; 429; 489.

Inflection: augeō; mōs; minus (compare); hīc.

Order of words : the arrangement of the words in the sentence represents the order of the development of the thought in the mind of the writer.

Prescribed list :

creātus est	aliquā	filiā	apud
quidem	successit	suscēpit	suprā
cōsuētūdine	vīcit	contrā	mare
putābantur	superāvit	dīmicāvit	sextō
mēnsis	post	cīvitātī	decimō

HOW NUMA POMPILIU^S, TULLUS HOSTILIUS, AND
ANCUS MARCIUS ENLARGED ROME

Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx¹ creātus est, quī bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitātī quam² Rōmulus prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs Rōmānīs mōrēsque cōnstituit, quī³ cōsuētūdine proeliōrum sēmibarbari⁴ putābantur, et annum dēscripsit, in decem mēnsis prius sine aliquā computatiōne cōnfūsum,⁵ et īfinīta Rōmae sacra ac templa cōnstituit. Huic successit⁶ Tullus Hostilius. Hīc bella gessit, Albānōs vīcit, quī ab urbe Rōmā duodecimō mīliārīo sunt, Vēientīs et Fidēnātēs bellō superāvit, urbem auxit, adiectō Caeliō⁷ monte. Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex filiā nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Contrā Latīnōs dīmicāvit, Aventīnum⁷ montem cīvitātī adiēcit et Iāniculum, apud īstium Tiberis cīvitātem suprā mare sextō decimō mīliārīo ab urbe Rōmā condidit. — EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui,—, <i>be helpful</i>	urbs, urbīs, f., <i>city</i>
lēx, lēgis, f., <i>law</i> (legal)	mīliārīum, mīliārī, n., <i>mile-stone</i> (mile)
dēscribō, 3. scripsi, scriptus, <i>mark out</i>	adiciō, 3, iēcī, iectus, <i>add to</i>
computatiō, ūnis, f., <i>reckoning</i>	nepōs, ūtis, m., <i>grandson</i>
cōfundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, <i>confuse</i>	īstium, īstī, n., <i>mouth</i>
īnfīnitus, a, um, <i>without end</i> (infinite)	condō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>found</i>
sacra, ūrum, n., <i>rites</i>	
templum, ī, n., <i>temple</i>	

NOTES

¹ *rēx*: predicate nominative after *creātus est*. ² *quam*: take with *minus*.
³ *quī*: refers to *Rōmānīs*. ⁴ *sēmibarbarī*: the prefix *sēmī* means *half*, as in "semicircle." For the case, see note on *rēx*. ⁵ *cōnfūsum*: with what does this participle agree? ⁶ *hūic successit*, etc.: *him succeeded Tullus Hostilius*. *Hūic* is emphatic. ⁷ *Caeliō, Aventinūm*: two of the seven hills of Rome.

Think of English words from *creātus*, *lēgēs*, *cōnstituit*, *contrā*, *mare*, and other words in the passage.

EXERCISE III

Grammar: A. 346; 370; 419; 420; 423. B. 201; 187, III; 227, 2; 230. G. 367; 368; 347; 409; 410; 393. H. 440, 5; 429; 489, 1; 486.

Inflection: *ferō*; *pars*; *omnis*; *īdem*.

Order of words: adjectives and genitives, if emphatic, stand before the nouns which they limit; if not emphatic, after their nouns.

Prescribed list:

deinde	inīvit	ipse	fossās
accēpit	mūrōs	successerat	imperāvit
aedificāvit	octāvō	post	terrārum
īstituit	imperī	suscēpit	dēlātīs
memoriam	occīsus est	quoque	fīliae

THE DEEDS OF TARQUINIUS PRISCUS AND SERVIUS TULLIUS, KINGS OF ROME

Deinde rēgnū Tarquinius Prīscus accēpit. Hīc numerū senātōrum¹ duplīcāvit, circum² Rōmae aedificāvit, lūdōs Rōmānōs īstituit, quī ad nostrā memoriam permanent.³ Vīcit⁴ īdem etiā Sabīnōs et partē agrōrum urbīs Rōmae territōriō adiūnxīt,⁵ prīmusque triumphāns⁶ urbē inīvit. Mūrōs fēcit et cloācās. Trīcēsimō octāvō imperī annō occīsus est per Ancī fīliōs,⁷ rēgīs eius cui ipse successerat. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium. Hīc quoque Sabīnōs vīcit, montīs⁸ trīs, Quirīnālēm, Vīminālēm,

Esquilīnum, urbī adiūnxīt, fossās circā mūrum dūxit. Prīmus cēnsum omnīū imperāvit, quī adhūc⁹ per orbem terrārum incognitus¹⁰ erat. Sub eō Rōma omnībus in cēnsum dēlātīs habuit octōgintā tria milia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum iīs quī in agrīs erant. Occīsus est quadrāgēsimō quīntō imperī annō scelere generī sui Tarquinī, fili eius rēgis cui ipse successerat, et filiae, quam Tarquinius habēbat uxōrem. — EUTROPIUS, I

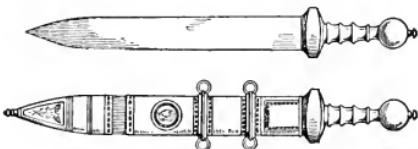
VOCABULARY

circus, ī, m., <i>the circus Maximus</i>	cēnsus, ūs, m., <i>census</i>
lūdus, ī, m., <i>game</i>	orbis, is, m., <i>circle</i> , (with terrārum) <i>world</i>
urbs, urbīs, f., <i>city</i>	
territōrium, territōrī, n., <i>domain</i> (territory)	scelus, eris, n., <i>crime</i>
cloāca, ae, f., <i>sewer</i>	quadrāgēsimus, a, um, <i>fortieth</i>
trīcēsimus, a, um, <i>thirtieth</i>	gener, erī, m., <i>son-in-law</i>
circā, prep., <i>around, round</i>	uxor, ūris, f., <i>wife</i>

NOTES

¹ senātōrum, duplīcāvit: infer the meaning from the English derivatives.
² circum: where the chariot races were held. ³ permanent: per + maneō.
⁴ vicit: emphatic. ⁵ adiūnxīt: ad + iungō. ⁶ triumphāns: refers to the entry of a general into Rome after a successful campaign. ⁷ per filiōs: how does this differ from ā filiīs? ⁸ montīs: *hills*. ⁹ adhūc: ad + hoc. It refers to time. ¹⁰ incognitus: in + cognōscō.

Determine the emphasis, or lack of it, in the case of each genitive in this passage.



GLADI

EXERCISE IV

Grammar: A. 413; 426, 2; 427, 3; 530; 531, 1; 579; 580. B. 222; 182, 1, 2; 232, 1; 282, 1; 313; 314, 1. G. 392; 337, R. 1; 411; 545, 1, 3; 648; 650. H. 473, 1; 418; 483; 568; 641; 642; 643.

Inflection: *volō*; *exercitus*; *septimus*; *ipse*.

Order of words: the demonstrative pronouns regularly precede the nouns which they modify.

Prescribed list:

ultimus	quoque	ducentīs	alter
pācem	vīgintī	quadrāgintā	potestātem
posteā	līberīs	hīc	redderentur
octāvō	fūgit	coepērunt	scīrent
decimō	ita	creārī	

THE LAST KING IS EXPELLED FROM ROME AND
CONSULS ARE ELECTED

Lūcius Tarquinius Superbus, *septimus* atque *ultimus rēgum*, Volscōs, quae gēns nōn longē ab urbe est, vīcit, cum¹ Tuscīs pācem fēcit, et templum Iovi² in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Posteā Ardeam oppugnāns, cīvitātem in octāvō decimō mīliārīō ab urbe positam, scelere fili suī imperium perdidit. Propter quod scelus Brūtus, parēns Tarquinī, populum commōvit. Exercitus quoque, quī cīvitātem Ardeam cum ipsō rēge oppugnābat, eum reliquit; et rēx ad urbem veniēns exclūsus est,³ cumque imperāsset⁴ annōs vīgintī quīnque, cum uxōre et liberīs suīs fūgit. Ita Rōmae⁵ rēgnātum est⁶ per septem rēgēs annīs ducentīs quadrāgintā tribus. Hīc cōsulēs coepērunt prō ūnō rēge duo⁷ hāc causā creārī, ut, sī ūnus malus⁸ esse voluisset, alter habēns potestātem similem eum coercēret. Et placuit⁹ nē imperium longius quam annum habērent, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis īsolentīrēs¹⁰ redderentur, sed cīvīlēs semper essent, quī sē¹¹ post annum scīrent futūrōs esse pīvātōs.

EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe</i>	malus, a, um, <i>bad</i>
urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>	similis, e, <i>like</i> (similar)
mīliārium, mīliārī, n., <i>milestone</i>	coerceō, 2, uī, itus, <i>check</i>
scelus, eris, n., <i>crime</i>	placeō, 2, uī, itum, <i>please</i>
perdō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>lose</i>	diūturnitās, ātis, f., <i>long duration</i>
parēns, entis, m., f., <i>relative</i>	cīvilis, e, <i>civil, of the citizens</i>
uxor, ūris, f., <i>wife</i>	semper, <i>always</i>

NOTES

¹ *cum*: what part of speech? Consider the case of *Tuscīs*. ² *Iovī*: dative case of *Iuppīter*. ³ *exclūsus est*: from *exclūdō*. Infer the meaning from the English derivative. ⁴ *imperāasset*: for *imperāvisset*; the *v* is dropped and the two vowels are contracted. ⁵ *Rōmae*: what question about *rēgnātūm est* does this word seem to answer? ⁶ *rēgnātūm est*: the ending *um* shows that the subject is neuter, *it*. Such impersonal forms are often used, where the English idiom employs the personal construction; *the government was carried on*. ⁷ *duo*: take with *cōnsulēs*. ⁸ *malus*: predicate adjective. ⁹ *placuit*: impersonal. ¹⁰ *īsolentīrēs*: first determine the positive; then infer the meaning from the English derivative. ¹¹ *sē*: to what word does it refer? For the case, note the ending of *futūrōs*.

Think of English words from *pācem*, *aedificāvit*, *positam*, *ūnus*.

EXERCISE V

Grammar: A. 419; 423, 1; 530; 531, 1; 549; 563. B. 227; 230; 282, 1; 286, 2; 295, 4. G. 409; 385; 545, 1, 3; 586; 546. H. 489; 483; 568; 598; 565.

Inflection: possum; auxilium; multus (compare); suī.

Order of words: an appositive usually follows the word to which it belongs.

Prescribed list:

maximē	rēgnūm	quoque	tunc
autem	restituī	iterum	suscipi
quisquam	dīmicāvit	reciperētur	sē contulit
manēret	occīdērunt	paene	longē
tamen	revertērunt	vērum	

THE FIRST CONSULS ARE ELECTED AND BEGIN WAR
WITH TARQUINIUS

Fuērunt¹ annō prīmō expulsīs² rēgibus cōnsulēs Lūcius Iūnius Brūtus, quī maximē ēgerat ut Tarquinius pellerētur, et Tarquinius Collātinus. Placuit³ autem nē quisquam in urbe manēret quī Tarquinius⁴ vocārētur. Ergō Collātinus ex urbe migrāvit et locō ipsīus factus est Valerius Pūblicola cōnsul.⁵ Commōvit tamen bellum urbī Rōmae rēx Tarquinius, quī erat expulsus, et collēctis multis gentibus, ut in rēgnum posset restituī,⁶ dīmicāvit. In prīmā pugnā Brūtus cōnsul et Arūns, Tarquinī filius, in vicem⁷ sē occidērunt. Rōmāni tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs revertērunt. Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius, ut recipereētur in rēgnum, bellum Rōmānīs⁸ intulit, auxilium⁹ eī ferente Porsenā, Tusciae rēge, et Rōmam paene cēpit. Vērum tunc quoque victus est. Tertiō annō post rēgēs expulsōs Tarquinius, cum suscipī nōn posset in rēgnum,¹⁰ neque eī Porsena, quī pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcerat, auxilium ferret, Tusculum sē contulit, quae cīvitās nōn longē ab urbe est, atque ibi per quattuordecim annōs prīvātus¹¹ cum uxōre vīxit.

EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

placeō, 2, uī, itum, <i>please</i>	colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, <i>gather</i>
urbs, urbīs, f., <i>city</i>	together
vocō, 1, <i>call</i>	gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe</i>
ergō, <i>therefore</i>	uxor, ūris, f., <i>wife</i>
migrō, 1, <i>depart</i> (migrate)	vīvō, 3, vīxi, vīctum, <i>live</i>

NOTES

¹ **fuērunt**: with intransitive verbs two nominatives may be expected, one subject, one predicate. ² **expulsīs**: in what ways may this construction be translated? Which is best here? ³ **placuit**: impersonal. ⁴ **Tarquinius**: predicate nominative after **vocārētur**. ⁵ **cōnsul**: see note on **Tarquinius**.

⁶ **ut . . . restituī**: this states the purpose of **dīmicāvit**. ⁷ **in vicem**: *in turn*.

⁸ **Rōmānīs**: in what case? Consider the verb. ⁹ **auxilium**: object of **ferente**. ¹⁰ **cum . . . rēgnum**: this answers the question "why" about **sē contulit**. ¹¹ **prīvātus**: from **prīvō**; *in retirement*.

EXERCISE VI

Grammar: A. 291, b; 305; 362; 370; 423, 1. B. 240, 2; 250, 1; 187, 1, III; 230. G. 614; 345; 347; 393. H. 498; 396; 424; 429; 486.

Inflection: eō; nōmen; alter; is.

Order of words: adverbs are regularly placed before the words which they modify.

Prescribed list:

posteā	autem	obsidibus	poscere
imperāvit	ferē	aggressus	adversum
deinde	intulit	rediēns	fūgit
gravissima	nē . . . quidem	coepit	vacuam
prōcessit	cognitum erat		

CÆSAR CONQUERS GAUL, VISITS BRITAIN, AND RETURNS
TO ROME WITH HIS ARMY

Annō urbis conditae¹ sescentēsimō nōnāgēsimō tertio Gāius Iūlius Caesar, quī posteā imperāvit, cum Lūciō Bibulō cōnsul² factus est. Dēcrēta est³ eī Gallia et Īlyricum cum legiōnibus decem. Is prīmō vīcit Helvētiōs, quī nunc Sēquanī⁴ appellantur, deinde per bella gravissima ūsque ad Ōceanum Britannicum prōcessit. Domuit⁵ autem annīs novem ferē omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpīs, flūmen Rhodanum,⁶ Rhēnum,⁶ et Ōceanum est. Britannīs mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cognitum erat, et eōs⁷ quoque victōs⁸ obsidibus⁹ acceptī stīpendiāriōs fēcit. Germānōs trāns Rhēnum aggressus immānissimis proeliis vīcit. Caesar rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit poscere alterum cōsulātum, et adversum patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōnsulēs cum Pompēiō senātusque omnis atque ūniversa¹⁰ nōbilitās ex urbe fūgit¹¹ et in Graeciam trānsiit. Ibi, Pompēiō duce, senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit. Caesar autem vacuam urbem ingressus dictātōrem sē fēcit. — EUTROPIUS, VI

VOCABULARY

urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>	mox, <i>soon</i>
condō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>found</i>	stipendiārius, a, um, <i>tributary</i>
sescentēsimus, a, um, <i>six hundred</i>	(stipend)
ūsque, <i>all the way, even</i>	immānis, e, <i>huge, great</i>
nōnāgēsimus, a, um, <i>ninetieth</i>	cōnsulātus, ūs, m., <i>consulship</i>
dēcernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, <i>decree</i>	patria, ae, f., <i>native land or city</i>
domō, 1, uī, itus, <i>subdue</i>	ingredior, gredī, gressus, <i>enter</i>
	dictātor, ūris, m., <i>dictator</i>

NOTES

¹ conditae: translate as a noun with *after*. ² cōnsul: predicate noun used with *factus est*. ³ dēcrēta est: agrees with the nearer subject.

⁴ Sēquani: predicate noun. ⁵ domuit: note the emphatic position. See *dēcrēta est* above. ⁶ Rhodanum, Rhēnum: *Rhone, Rhine*. ⁷ eōs, stipendiāriōs: which of these is the direct object of *fēcit*, and which the predicate accusative? ⁸ victōs: translate by a clause. ⁹ obsidibus: what construction does this illustrate, and what is the best way to translate it?

¹⁰ ūniversa: infer the meaning from the synonym *omnis*, and think of an English derivative. ¹¹ fūgit: see note on *dēcrēta est*.

EXERCISE VII

Grammar: A. 412; 456; 530; 531, 1; 579; 580. B. 220, 1; 328, 1; 282, 1; 313; 314. G. 399; 423, 1, 2; 545, 1, 3; 648; 650. H. 473, 3; 607; 568; 642; 643.

Inflection: nōlō; caput: maior; ille.

Order of words: words depending on a noun accompanied by a modifier are often put between the noun and the modifier.

Prescribed list:

fortissimōs	tamen	deinde	occīdit
superāvit	nocte	apud	caput
inde	nec	utrimque	cōspectō
adversum	scīre	contrā	lacrimās
ēvāsit	tantum		

POMPEY'S LONG CONFLICT WITH CÆSAR, FOLLOWED BY HIS DEFEAT AND DEATH

In Hispāniā¹ Caesar exercitūs Pompēi validissimōs et fortissimōs cum tribus ducibus superāvit. Inde in Graeciam trānsiit et adversum² Pompēium dīmicāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est et fugātus, ēvāsit tamen quia nocte³ Pompēius sequī nōluit, dīxitque Caesar nec Pompēium scīre⁴ vincere et illō tantum⁵ diē sē⁶ potuisse superāri. Deinde in Thessaliā⁷ apud Palaepharsālum prōductis utrimque ingentibus cōpiis dīmicāvērunt. Numquam adhūc cōpiae Rōmānae in ūnum⁸ neque maiōrēs neque meliōribus ducibus convēnerant, tōtum terrārum orbem⁹ facile subāctūrae sī contrā barbarōs dūcerentur. Pugnātum est¹⁰ ingentī contentiōne,¹¹ victusque est ad postrēmum Pompēius, quī Alexandriam petiit, ut ā rēge Aegyptī acciperet auxilia.¹² Qui¹³ fortūnam magis quam amicitiam secūtus occīdit Pompēium, caput eius ad Caesarem mīsit. Quō cōspectō Caesar etiam lacrimās fūdisse dicitur, tantī virī intuēns caput et generī quondam suī. — EUTROPIUS, VI

VOCABULARY

validus, a, um, <i>strong</i> (valid)	subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, <i>subdue</i>
fugō, i, <i>put to flight</i>	contentiō, ūnis, f., <i>conflict</i>
ingēns, ingentis, <i>huge</i>	fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, <i>shed</i>
numquam, <i>never</i>	intueor, 2, tuitus or tūtus, <i>look upon</i>
adhūc, <i>thus far</i>	gener, erī, m., <i>son-in-law</i>
orbis, is, m., <i>circle</i> (orb)	quondam, <i>once</i>

NOTES

¹ Hispāniā: *Spain*. ² adversum: synonym of contrā. ³ nocte: what question about sequī does this answer? ⁴ scīre: *know how*. ⁵ tantum: adverb, *only*. ⁶ sē: to whom does this refer? ⁷ Thessaliā: Thessaly, a district of northern Greece. ⁸ ūnum: supply *locum*. ⁹ terrārum orbem: *the world*. ¹⁰ pugnātum est: impersonal. Translate by the personal construction. ¹¹ ingentī contentiōne: answers the question "how" about pugnātum est. ¹² ut . . . auxilia: gives the purpose of petiit. ¹³ quī: what word is the antecedent? Why is quī put first?

Select from the passage examples of emphatic words or phrases.

EXERCISE VIII

Grammar: A. 194, *b*; 196; 427, 3; 496; 563; 574. B. 115; 232, 1; 337, 2, *a*, *c*; 295, 4; 300, 1. G. 251, 1; 129; 411; 282; 546, 1, 2; 467. H. 237; 483; 638, 1; 565; 649, II.

Inflection: *fiō*; *diēs*; *posterus*; *suus*.

Order of words: in all sentences the beginning is a place of emphasis, and there is usually put the emphatic word, phrase, or clause.

Prescribed list:

<i>mōs</i>	<i>mulier</i>	<i>ūtilius</i>	<i>potius</i>
<i>ēnūntiāret</i>	<i>autem</i>	<i>ubi</i>	<i>īnstitisset</i>
<i>priusquam</i>	<i>cupidior</i>	<i>postrīdiē</i>	<i>fidem</i>
<i>ēgissent</i>	<i>tandem</i>	<i>ōrant</i>	<i>praeter</i>
<i>licēre</i>	<i>urgente</i>		

HOW PAPIRIUS AVOIDED TELLING HIS MOTHER WHAT
WAS DONE IN THE SENATE

Mōs anteā¹ senātōribus Rōmae fuit in cūriam cum praetextātīs filiis inire. Forte rēs maior quaepiam cōsultātā² et in diem postērum prōlāta est, placuitque nē quis³ eam rem ēnūntiāret priusquam dēcrēta esset. Sed māter Papīrī⁴ puerī, qui cum patre suō in cūriā fuerat, percontāta est filium quid in senātū patrēs ēgissent. Puer respondit tacendum esse⁵ neque id dicī licēre. Mulier autem fit audiēdī cupidior, ac tandem puer, mātre urgente,⁶ āctum⁷ in senātū dīxit utrum vidērētur ūtilius esse, ūnusne ut duās uxōrēs habēret an ut ūna duōbus nūpta esset. Ubi illa hoc audīvit, domō trepidāns ēgreditur, ad cēterās⁸ mātrōnās sē adfert. Pervēnit ad senātūm postrīdiē mātrūm familiās caterva. Lacrimantēs⁹ ūrant ut ūna potius duōbus nūpta fieret quam ut duae ūnī. Senātōrēs in cūriam ingredientēs mīrābantur quae illa mulierum īnsānia¹⁰ et quid sibi postulātiō¹¹ ista vellet.¹² Puer Papīrius in medium cūriāe prōgressus, quid māter audire īnstitisset, quid ipse mātri dīxisset, dēmōnstrat. Senātūs fidem atque ingenium puerī laudat

et cōsultum facit nē posthāc puerī cum patribus in cūriam ineant, praeter illum ūnum Papirium, cui posteā cognōmen¹³ honōris grātiā datum est "Prætextātus." — AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

<i>cūria, ae, f., senate house</i>	<i>percontor, i, inquire</i>
<i>prætextātus, a, um, wearing the toga of boyhood</i>	<i>taceō, 2, uī, itus, be silent (tacit)</i>
<i>forte, by chance</i>	<i>uxor, ūris, f., wife</i>
<i>quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, some</i>	<i>nūpta, married</i>
<i>cōsultō, i, consider</i>	<i>trepidō, i, be in alarm</i>
<i>placeō, 2, uī, itum, please</i>	<i>caterva, ae, f., crowd</i>
<i>dēcernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, decide</i>	<i>ingenium, inge'ñi, n., ability</i>
	<i>cōsultum, ī, n., decree</i>

NOTES

¹ anteā: adverb from ante. ² cōsultātā: est is understood. ³ quis: pronouns are usually indefinite when they follow nē. ⁴ Papirī: genitive. ⁵ tacendum esse: impersonal; the form shows necessity. ⁶ mātre urgente: this states a reason for the boy's action. ⁷ āctum: what mood? Consider dixit. Translate, *there had been a discussion.* ⁸ cēterās: synonym of reliquī. ⁹ lacrimantēs: for the meaning, compare the noun lacrima. ¹⁰ īsānia: think of the English derivative. ¹¹ postulātiō: postulō + tiō. ¹² sibi vellet: meant. ¹³ cognōmen: name. One given because of some characteristic or act.

Think of English words from ēnūntiāret, filium, urgente, ūtilius, fidem, ingenium, facit.



AQUILA LEGIONIS

EXERCISE IX

Grammar: A. 405; 410; 412; 448; 540. B. 216; 218, 1; 220, 1; 281; 286, 1. G. 401; 407; 399; 266; 540; 541. H. 468; 477; 473, 3; 522; 588, I, II.

Inflection: *ūtor*; *vir*; *multus* (compare); *tū*.

Order of words: in a clause or sentence words are usually arranged, from the beginning, in the order of their prominence in the thought.

Prescribed list:

verbōrum	plānē	vīs
cupidissimō	tū	scīre

FAVORINUS GIVES GOOD ADVICE ABOUT THE USE
OF WORDS

Favōrīnus philosophus¹ adulēscētī, veterum verbōrum² in cotīdiānīs sermōnībus ignōtōrum cupidissimō, "Curius," inquit, "et Fabricius et Coruncānius, antiquissimī³ virī, plānē cum suīs locūtī sunt, neque Auruncōrum aut Sicānōrum aut Pelasgōrum, qui pīmī coluisse Ītaliā dīcuntur, sed aetātīs suaē verbīs ūsī sunt; tū autem sermōnē abhīc multis annīs iam dēsītō ūteris, quod nēminem vīs scīre atque intellegere quae dīcās. Antiquitātēm⁴ tibi placēre aīs, quod honesta et bona et modesta sit. Vīve ergō mōrībus antiquīs, loquere verbīs praeſentībus; atque id, quod ā Gāiō Caesare ſcripturn est, habē semper in memoriā atque in pectore, ut tamquam saxum sic fugiās īsolēns verbum." — AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, entis, m.. f.. *youth*
sermō, ūnis, m., *talk*
ignōtus, a, ūm, *unknown*
inquit (defective verb), *says*
colō, 3, coluī, *cultus, dwell in*
aetās, ētis, f.. *age*
dēsinō, 3. sīvī, *situs, leave off*
placeō, 2, ūī, *itum, please*

aiō (defective verb), *say*
vīvō, 3, vīxī, *victum, live*
ergō, *therefore*
pectus, oris, n., *breast, heart*
tamquam, *as if*
saxum, ī, n.. *rock*
īsolēns, entis, *unusual*

NOTES

¹ **philosophus**: English derivative? ² **verbōrum**: take with **cupidissimō**.
³ **antiquissimī**: what is the positive? Synonym of **vetus**. For the meaning, think of an English derivative. ⁴ **antiquitātem**: formed by attaching a suffix to the stem of the positive of **antiquissimī**. What is the suffix?

Determine whether the following words are emphatic: (l. 1) **verbōrum**, **cotidiānīs**; (l. 3) **plānē**; (l. 4) **primī**; (l. 6) **ūteris**; (l. 11) **īsolēns**.

EXERCISE X

Grammar: A. 415; 546; 573; 574. B. 224; 288, 1, B; 300, 1. G. 400; 585; 452, 2; 467. H. 473, 2; 600, II, 1; 649, II.

Inflection: **dō**; **manus**; **cōnsulāris**; **ego**.

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the word which it limits.

Prescribed list:

ferae	familiāris	linguā	cotīdiānīs
praeter	tum	mīra	concessī
corpore	mōre	quaerit	dēfuisset
fremitū	prope	obtinēret	cibus
converterat			

A LION LET LOOSE IN THE AMPHIATHEATER REFUSES TO
ATTACK ANDROCLUS, BUT FAWNS ON HIM

In circō¹ maximō vēnātiōnis pugna populō dabātur. Multae ibi ferae, sed praeter alia omnia leō corpore vāstō et fremitū terrificō² animōs oculōsque³ omnium in sēsē converterat. Intrōductus⁴ erat inter complūris cēterōs⁵ ad pugnam ferārum datōs servus virī cōsulāris⁶; eī servō⁷ Androclus nōmen fuit. Hunc ille leō ubi vīdit procul, repente quasi admirāns stetit ac deinde placidē, tamquam familiāris,⁸ ad hominem accēdit. Tum caudam mōre adūlantium canum blandē movet et manūs hominis, prope iam exanimātī metū,⁹ linguā lēniter dēmulcet. Haec tam mīra rēs maximōs populī clāmōrēs excitat et Caesar Androclum vocat quaeritque causam, cūr illī ūnī atrōcissimus leō pepercisset. Ibi Androclus rem admirandam

nārrat. "Cum prōvinciam," inquit, "Āfricam prōcōnsulārī imperiō meus dominus obtinēret, ego ibi iniquis¹⁰ eius et cotidiānis verberibus ad fugam sum coāctus, et in locōs dēsertōs et remōtōs concessī ac, sī dēfuisset cibus, cōnsilium fuit mortem aliquō pactō quaerere."

AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

vēnātiō, ūnis, f., <i>hunting</i>	adūlor, 1, <i>façon</i>
leō, ūnis, m., <i>lion</i>	canis, is, m., f., <i>dog (canine)</i>
servus, ī, m., <i>slave (servile)</i>	blandē, <i>gently</i>
procul, <i>at a distance</i>	lēniter, <i>lightly</i>
repente, <i>suddenly</i>	dēmulceō, 2, ūlūsī, <i>mulctus, stroke</i>
quasi, <i>just as if</i>	atrōx, ūcis, <i>fierce</i>
stō, 1, stetī, <i>statum, stand</i>	parcō, 3, pepercī, <i>parsum, spare</i>
placidē, <i>calmly</i>	dominus, ī, m., <i>master</i>
tamquam, <i>as if</i>	verber, eris, n., <i>lash</i>
cauda, ae, f., <i>tail</i>	pactum, ī, n., <i>way</i>

NOTES

¹ circō: think of the English derivative; a place of entertainment.
² terrificō: there is a common English derivative. ³ ūculōs: from this is derived the word "oculist." ⁴ intrōductus: from intrō, *within*, + dūcō.
⁵ cēterōs: synonym of reliquī. ⁶ cōnsulāris: from cōnsul + āris = *pertaining to, of the rank of*. ⁷ servō: a dative, showing the possessor. Translate it as if it were a nominative, and fuit by the appropriate tense of the verb *hate*. ⁸ familiāris: compare the derivation of this word with that of cōnsulāris. ⁹ metū: synonym of timor. ¹⁰ iniquis: formed from the adjective aequus by prefixing in. Compare the words "convenient" and "inconvenient," "equity" and "iniquity."

Consider the genitives in the passage and decide whether the position of each is emphatic or not.

EXERCISE XI

Grammar: A. 400; 401; 423, 2; 500, 4; 504, b. B. 214, 1, 2; 181, 1; 337, 8, b, 2; 338, 1, c. G. 390, 1; 405; 336; 430; 428, R. 2. H. 462; 417; 622; 626, 3.

Inflection: ostendō; ignis; tōtus; quī.

Order of words: the following arrangement of the parts of a predicate is common: ablative, indirect object, direct object, adverb, verb.

Prescribed list:

quendam	cōnspectū	vīctū	statim
nanctus	postquam	postrēmō	cūrāvit
vulnerātō	sublātum	viam	quoque
illīc	tunc	trīduī	beneficī
quidem	operā	dēductus	

ANDROCLUS RELATES HOW HE MET THE WOUNDED LION
AND GAINED ITS AFFECTION

Tum specum quendam nanctus remōtum,¹ in eum mē recondō. Neque multō² post ad eundem specum vēnit hīc leō, ūnō pede vulnerātō. Atque illīc prīmō quidem cōnspectū³ advenientis⁴ leōnis territus sum; sed postquam intrōgressus⁵ leō mē procul videt, mītis accessit et sublātum pedem ostendere mihi quasi opis petendae causā vīsus est. Ibi stirpem ingentem, pedī eius haerentem, revellī et sine magnō iam metū cruōrem siccāvī. Illā tunc meā operā levātus, pede in manibus meīs positō, quiēvit. Ex eō diē trienium⁶ tōtum ego et leō in eōdem specū eōdemque vīctū vīximus. Postrēmō autem reliquī specum et viam ferē trīduī permēnsus ā mīlitibus vīsus apprehēnsusque sum⁷ et ad dominum ex Āfrīcā Rōmam⁸ dēductus. Is mē statim damnandum dandumque ad ferās cūrāvit. Intellegō autem hunc quoque leōnem captum grātiām mihi nunc beneficī et medicīnae referre. Haec dīxit Androclus; quae cum scripta essent circumlātaque populō, omnibus potentibus dīmissus Androclus et poenā solūtus est et leōne dōnātus.⁹

VOCABULARY

specus, ūs, m., <i>caue</i>	levō, 1, <i>relieve</i>
recondō, 3, <i>didī</i> , <i>ditus</i> , <i>hide away</i>	quiēscō, 3, ēvī, ētus, <i>rest (quiet)</i>
terreō, 2, <i>uī</i> , <i>itus</i> , <i>frighten</i>	vīvō, 3, <i>vīxī</i> , <i>vīctum</i> , <i>live</i>
mītis, e, <i>mīld</i>	permētior, 4, mēnsus, <i>traverse</i>
(ops), opis, f., <i>aid</i>	damnō, 1, <i>condemn</i>
stirps, pis, f., <i>root</i>	medicīna, ae, f., <i>relief</i>
ingēns, ingentis, <i>huge</i>	scrībō, 3, <i>scrīpsī</i> , <i>scrīptus</i> , <i>write</i> (script)
haereō, 2, <i>haesī</i> , <i>haesus</i> , <i>stick</i>	poena, ae, f., <i>punishment</i>
revellō, 3, <i>vellī</i> , <i>vulsus</i> , <i>tear away</i>	solvō, 3, <i>solvī</i> , <i>solūtus</i> , <i>release</i> (solve)
cruor, ūris, m., <i>blood</i>	
siccō, 1, <i>dry</i>	

NOTES

¹ *remōtum*: notice that this word is made emphatic by separating it from the word which it modifies. ² *multō*: take with *post*, an adverb. ³ *cōspectū*: from *con* + *spec* + *tus*. Give the force of each one of these. ⁴ *advenītīs*: note the force of the prefix, *towards*. ⁵ *intrōgressus*: think of *prōgressus*. The prefix *intrō* means *within*. ⁶ *triennīum*: from the stems of *trēs* and *annūs*. ⁷ *apprehēnsus sum*: from *ad* + *prehēndō*. What common English word from this? What meaning has it? ⁸ *Rōmam*: not the object of *dēductus*. ⁹ *dōnātus*: think of a common English word from this, and its meaning.

Observe the force of the prefixes in this passage: *remōtum*, *accessit*, *permēnsus*, *dēductus*, *referre*, *circumlāta*, and others.

EXERCISE XII

Grammar: A. 343; 405; 418; 419; 546. B. 195; 198; 216; 226; 227; 288, 1, B. G. 362; 401; 397; 409; 585. H. 440, 1; 468; 480; 489; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: patior; latus (noun); celeriter (compare); *īdem*.

Order of words: limiting words, when emphatic, usually stand between a preposition and the word which the preposition governs.

Prescribed list:

nōmine	immīsit	vulneribus	rettulit
manum	undique	mediīs	statim

THE AFFECTION AND LOYALTY OF A FAMOUS HORSE

Equus Alexandri regis nomine Bucephalus fuit. De hoc equo haec memoriā digna¹ accēpimus. Ubi ornatus erat armatusque ad proelium, haud umquam īscendi sēsē² ab aliō nisi ab rēge passus est. Bellō³ Indicō cum īsidēns in eō Alexander facinora faceret fortia, in hostium manum, nōn satis sibi prōvidēns, immisit. Coniectis undique in Alexandrum tēlis, vulneribus altis in cervice atque in latere equus perfossus est. Moribundus tamen ac prope iam exsanguis ē mediis hostibus rēgem celeriter rettulit atque, ubi eum extrā⁴ tēla extulerat,⁵ statim concidit et animam⁶ exspirāvit. Tum rēx Alexander, partā eius bellī victoriā, oppidum in iisdem locis condidit idque ob equi honōrēs Bucephalon⁷ appellāvit.

AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

Alexander, drī, m., <i>Alexander the Great</i> , king of Macedonia	cervīx, īcis, f., <i>neck</i>
dignus, a, um, <i>worthy</i>	perfodiō, 3, fōdī, <i>fossus</i> , <i>pierce through</i>
ōrnō, 1, <i>equip</i> (ornament)	moribundus, a, um, <i>dying</i>
haud, <i>not at all</i>	exsanguis, e, <i>lifeless</i>
umquam, <i>ever</i>	concidō, 3, cidī, —, <i>collapse</i>
īscendō, 3, scendī, scēnsus, <i>mount</i>	exspirō, 1, <i>breathe out</i>
īnsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, <i>sit (on)</i>	pariō, 3, peperī, <i>partus</i> , <i>achieve</i>
facinus, oris, n., <i>devil</i>	condō, 3, didī, <i>ditus</i> , <i>found</i>

NOTES

¹ *digna*: followed by the ablative. ² *sēsē*: for the case, consider the voice of *īscendi*. ³ *bellō*: answers the question "when" about *faceret*.
⁴ *extrā*: what does the word "extraordinary" mean? What is the force of the prefix?
⁵ *extulerat*: get the meaning from the two parts of the word.
⁶ *animam*: synonym of *vita*, found in the English words "vital," "vitality."
⁷ *Bucephalon*: accusative singular.

Observe the many words with prefixes in this passage and try to decide what each prefix means.

EXERCISE XIII

Grammar: A. 384; 412; 426, 2, 3; 580. B. 192, 1; 220, 1; 182, 2; 228; 314, 1. G. 359; 399; 416, 1; 418, 1, *a. b.*; 650. H. 434, 2; 473, 3; 418; 483; 642; 643.

Inflection: *fīō*; *terra*; *bonus* (compare); *quīdam*.

Order of words: an appositive usually follows the word to which it belongs.

Prescribed list:

accūsāvit	nōmine	adversum	sententiam
mollibus	quaedam	hinc	inde
pāx	tum	āvertit	prōsecūta est

HOW SCIPIO REPELLED THE CHARGE OF HAVING
TAKEN A BRIBE

Mārcus Naevius, tribūnus plēbis, accūsāvit Scipiōnem¹ ad popu-
lum, dixitque eum accēpisse ā rēge Antiochō pecūniā, ut con-
diciōnibus mollibus pāx cum eō populi Rōmānī nōmine fieret, et
quaedam item alia indigna² tālī virō addidit.³ Tum Scipiō pauca
praefātus, quae dignitās⁴ vītae suaē atque glōria⁵ postulābat,
"Memoriā," inquit, "Quirītēs,⁶ repetō,⁷ diem esse hodiernum, quō
Hannibalem Poenum, imperiō vestrō inimīcissimum,⁸ magnō proeliō
in terrā Āfricā vīcī, pācemque et victōriam vōbīs peperi praeclāram.
Nōn igitur simus⁹ adversum deōs ingrātī et, cēnseō, relinquāmus
nebulōnem hunc, eāmus hinc prōtinus¹⁰ Iovi optimō maximō
grātulātum."¹¹ Id cum dixisset, āvertit et īre ad Capitōlium coepit.
Tum cōtiō ūniversa, quae ad sententiam dē Scipiōne ferendam
convēnerat, relictō tribūnō Scipiōnem in Capitōlium comitāta, atque
inde ad aedēs¹² eius cum laetitiā prōsecūta est.—AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

plēbs, plēbis, f., <i>common people</i>	(praefor), <i>fārī, fātus</i> , <i>say beforehand</i>
pecūnia, ae, f., <i>money</i> (pecuniary)	<i>vīta, ae, f., life</i> (vital)
tālis, e, <i>such</i>	<i>inquam</i> (defective verb), <i>say</i>

hodiernus, a, um, <i>to-day's</i>	nebulō, ūnis, m., <i>paltry fellow</i>
pariō, 3, peperī, <i>partus, achieve</i>	grātulor, i, <i>give thanks</i>
praeclārus, a, um, <i>famous</i>	cōntiō, ūnis, m., <i>assembly</i>
igitur, <i>therefore</i>	comitor, i, <i>accompany</i>
deus, i, m., <i>god</i>	laetitia, ae, f., <i>joy</i>
cēnseō, 2, uī, us, <i>propose, move</i>	

NOTES

¹ **Scipiōnēm**: Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, who defeated Hannibal at Zama. ² **indigna**: from *in* + *dignus*, *worthy*. What is the force of the prefix? Think of "convenient" and "inconvenient." ³ **addidit**: get the meaning from the English derivative. ⁴ **dignitās**: from *dignus* and what suffix? What is the real meaning of the word? ⁵ **glōria**: think of the English word. ⁶ **Quiritēs**: *Roman citizens*. ⁷ **repetō**: derive the meaning from the prefix and the verb. ⁸ **inimicissimum**: from *in* + *amicus*. Compare **indignus** above. ⁹ **sīmus**: introduce the translation of this and the following subjunctives by *let*. ¹⁰ **prōtinus**: synonym of **statim**. ¹¹ **grātulātum**: notice that this looks like a participle, but does not agree with any other word. It shows purpose. ¹² **aedēs**: synonym of **domus**.

Note the position of the appositives in the passage.

EXERCISE XIV

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3; 405; 409; 531, i; 580. B. 201, 2; 216; 218; 282, i; 314, i. G. 369; 401; 545, i, 3; 650. H. 441; 468; 476; 568; 642; 643.

Inflection: doceō; domus; omnis; is.

Order of words: indefinite pronouns are usually unemphatic and follow their nouns.

Prescribed list:

locūtus erat	cōnspicimus	propinqua	praefectus
familiārēs	quandam	vēndidisse	turrim
prōsequēbāmur	ēditam	ēmissem	latere
subeuntēs	īgnī	docuisset	

HOW TO MAKE BUILDINGS FIREPROOF

Locūtus erat Antōnius Iūliānus rhētor fēlicissimē eumque nōs, familiārēs¹ eius, prōsequēbāmur domum, cum subeuntēs montem Cispium² cōnspicimus īsulam³ quandam, multis altīisque tabulātī

ēditam, īgnī occupātam⁴ et propinqua iam omnia flagrāre vāstō incendiō.⁵ Tum quispiam⁶ ibi ex comitibus Iūliānī, "Magnī," inquit, "reditūs⁷ urbānōrum praediōrum, sed pericula sunt longē maxima. Si quid autem posset remedi⁸ esse, nē domūs Rōmae ārdērent, vēndidisse⁹ rēs rūsticās et urbicās¹⁰ ēmissēm." Atque illi Iūliānus, "Sī annālem," inquit, "ūndēvīcēsimūm Quīntī Claudī lēgissēs, docuisset tē profectō Archelāus, rēgis Mithridātī¹¹ praefectus, quō¹² remediō īgnem dēfenderēs. In eō enim librō scriptum invēni,¹³ cum oppugnāret Lūcius Sulla in terrā Atticā Piraeum et contrā Archelāus, rēgis Mithridātī praefectus, ex eō oppidō prōpugnāret,¹⁴ turrim ligneam dēfendendī causā strūctam, ex omnī latere circumplexam īgnī, ārdēre nōn potuisse, quod alūmine ab Archelāō oblitera fuisse¹⁵." — AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

rētōr, oris, m., <i>teacher of oratory</i>	legō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, <i>read</i>
fēlīciter, <i>happily</i>	profectō, <i>assuredly</i>
tabulātum, ī, n., <i>floor, story</i>	liber, librī, m., <i>book</i>
flagrō, 1, <i>be on fire</i>	scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, <i>write</i> (scribe)
vāstus, a, um, <i>enormous</i>	ligneus, a, um, <i>wooden</i>
comes, itis, m.. f., <i>companion</i>	struō, 3, strūxī, strūctus, <i>erect</i> (structure)
inquam (defective verb), <i>say</i>	circumplectō, 3, ——, plexus, <i>en- circle</i>
urbānus, a, um, <i>of the city (urbane)</i>	alūmen, inis, n., <i>alum</i>
praedium, praedī, n., <i>estate</i>	oblinō, 3, lēvī, litus, <i>smear</i>
ārdeō, 2. ārsī, ārsūrus, <i>burn (ardent)</i>	
rūsticus, a, um, <i>of the country</i>	
annālis, is, m., <i>chronicle</i>	
ūndēvīcēsimus, a, um, <i>nineteenth</i>	

NOTES

¹ familiārēs: used as a noun. ² Cispium: a part of the Esquiline hill.
³ īsulam: *tenement building*. ⁴ occupātam: supply esse. ⁵ incendiō: from the verb incendō and the suffix ium, showing *action*. ⁶ quispiam: synonym of aliquis. ⁷ reditūs: noun from the verb redeō. ⁸ reme'dī: genitive. Get the meaning from the English derivative. ⁹ vēndidisse: this is in the conclusion of an unreal condition. ¹⁰ urbicās: synonym of

urbānus. ¹¹ *Mithridātī:* genitive. Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor. ¹² *quō:* interrogative; this clause is the second object of *docuis-set.* ¹³ *invēnī:* *in* + *veniō, come upon.* ¹⁴ *prōpugnāret:* note the prefix and its force. ¹⁵ *fuisset:* used instead of *esset.*

Think of English words from *locūtus erat*, *rhētor*, *cōspicimus*, *īnsulam, rēgis, Ignem.*

EXERCISE XV

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 384; 456; 530; 531, 1; 568. B. 201, 1; 192, 1; 328, 1; 282, 1; 297, 1. G. 369; 359; 423, 1, 2; 545, 1, 3; 553, 1. H. 442; 434, 2; 607, 1; 568; 566.

Inflection: *possum*; *filius*; *dulcis*; *hīc.*

Order of words: possessive adjectives, unless emphatic, stand after their nouns.

Prescribed list:

· frātris	redeō	efficiam	oportet
līberīs	experior	dēbeō	aequō
quaererem	studiīs	enīm	subīre
beneficiō	sentiam	suscipiendās	

PLINY WRITES TO A FRIEND ON THE CHOICE OF A BOYS' SCHOOL

Quid iūcundius mihi esse potuit quam ut praceptorēm frātris tuī liberīs quaererem? Nam beneficiō¹ tuō in scholam redeō et illam dulcissimam aetātem quasi² resūmō.³ Sedeō inter iuvenēs, ut solēbam, atque etiam experior quantum apud illōs auctōritātis ex studiīs habeam. Cum omnīs quī profitentur audierō, quid dē quōque sentiam scribam,⁴ efficiamque, quantum tamen epistulā cōsequī poterō, ut ipse omnīs audisse videāris. Dēbeō enim tibi, dēbeō memoriae frātris tuī hanc fidem, hoc studium, praesertim super tantā rē. Nam quid magis interest vestrā⁵ quam ut liberī dignī illō⁶ patre, tē patruō reperiantur? Nec ignōrō suscipiendās offēnsās in ēligendō praceptorē, sed oportet mē nō modo offēnsās vērum etiam simultātēs prō frātris tuī filiīs tam aequō animō subīre quam parentēs prō suīs.⁷ Valē. — PLINY THE YOUNGER

VOCABULARY

iūoundus, a, um, <i>pleasant</i>	scribō, 3, scripsi, scriptus, <i>write</i> (scripture)
praeceptor, ōris, m., <i>teacher</i>	epistula, ae, f., <i>letter</i>
schola, ae, f., <i>school</i>	dignus, a, um, <i>worthy</i>
aetās, ātis, f., <i>age</i>	patruus, ī, m., <i>uncle</i>
sedeō, 2, sēdi, sessum, sit	ignōrō, 1, <i>be unaware</i> (ignorant)
iuvenis, is, m., f., <i>youth</i> (juvenile)	offēnsa, ae, f., <i>inconvenience</i>
soleō, 2, solitus, <i>be accustomed</i>	ēligō, 3, lēgi, lēctus, <i>select</i>
profiteor, 2, fessus, <i>be a teacher</i>	simultās, ātis, f., <i>jealousy</i>

NOTES

¹ beneficō: shows cause, *thanks to*. ² quasi: *as it were*. ³ resūmō: from *re* + sūmō. Give an English verb from this word. ⁴ scribam: the preceding clause is its object. ⁵ interest vestrā: *concerns you*. *Vestrā* is the ablative singular feminine of the possessive pronoun, governed by *interest*. ⁶ illō: the ablative follows *dignus*. *Patre* is an appositive of *illō*.
⁷ suīs: understand *filiīs*.

EXERCISE XVI

Grammar: A. 419; 420, 1; 423, 2; 427, 2, 3. B. 227, 2, a; 181, 1; 182, 1, a; 228, 1, a. G. 409; 410; 336; 337; 386. H. 489, 1; 417; 491, II, 1, 3.

Inflection: sequor; mors; tōtus; ille.

Order of words: the place of emphasis in the clause or sentence is usually the beginning.

Prescribed list:

ācrius	manibus	vigiliam	manēbat
strepitus	catēnās	quoque	pretiō
deinde	inde	discesserat	condūcit
cōflectus			

ATHENODORUS HIRES A HAUNTED HOUSE

Erat Athēnīs spatiōsa¹ et capāx² domus, sed īfāmis et pestilēns. Per silentium³ noctis sonus ferri et, sī attenderēs⁴ ācrius, strepitus vinculōrum, longius prīmō, deinde ē proximō, audiēbātur; mox appārēbat īdōlon, senex maciē et squālōre cōflectus, prōmissā

barbā, manibus catēnās gerēbat quatiēbatque.⁵ Inde inhabitantēs trīstis noctis per metum⁶ vigilābant. Vigiliām morbus et, crēscente⁷ metū, mors sequēbātur. Nam interdiū quoque, quamquam discesserat imāgō, memoria imāginis manēbat. Dēserta inde erat domus et tōta illi mōnstrō relictā. Vēnit Athēnās philosophus Athēnodōrus, vīdit titulum, auditōque pretiō omnia cognōvit ac nihilōminus⁸ eam condūcit.⁹ — PLINY THE YOUNGER

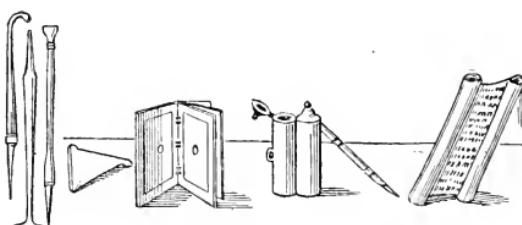
VOCABULARY

īnfāmis, e, <i>of ill repute</i>	squālor, ōris, m., <i>filth</i>
pestilēns, entis, <i>unhealthy</i>	prōmittō, 3, mīsī, <i>missus</i> , <i>let grow</i>
sonus, ī, m., <i>sound</i>	barba, ae, f., <i>beard</i>
ferrum, ī, n., <i>iron</i>	quatiō, 3, —, <i>quassus</i> , <i>shake</i>
vinculum, ī, n., <i>fetter</i>	trīstis, e, <i>sad</i>
mox, <i>soon</i>	vigilō, 1, <i>keep awake</i> (vigil)
appāreō, 2, uī, —, <i>appear</i>	morbus, ī, m., <i>sickness</i> (morbid)
īdōlon, ī, n., <i>ghost</i>	interdiū, <i>by day</i>
senex, senis, m., <i>old man</i>	quamquam, <i>although</i>
maciēs, ēī, f., <i>leanness</i>	titulus, ī, m., <i>placard</i> "for rent"

NOTES

¹ spatiōsa: spatiū + ūsus, *full of*. ² capāx: synonym of magnus. English derivative? ³ silentium: think of the English derivative. ⁴ attenderēs: see note on silentium. ⁵ quatiēbat: all the verbs thus far are in this tense. Why? ⁶ metum: synonym of timor. ⁷ crēscente: synonym of augeor. ⁸ nihilōminus: nihil + minus. ⁹ condūcit: *rents*.

From many of the words in the passage are derived common English words. Make a list.



WRITING MATERIALS

EXERCISE XVII

Grammar: A. 384; 401; 409; 412; 506; 563. B. 192, 1; 214, 1, c; 218; 220, 1; 338, 3; 295, 1. G. 359; 405; 401; 399; 432, R.; 546, 1. H. 434, 2; 462; 476; 473, 3; 628; 565.

Inflection: *eō*: locus; posterus (compare); *ipse*.

Order of words: a word, phrase, or clause is more likely to limit a word which follows it than one which precedes it.

Prescribed list

poscit	initiō	intrā	adiit
vacua	tollere	respicit	posteā
fingeret	appropinquāre	morātus	

ATHENODORUS CAUSES THE GHOST TO DEPART FROM
THE HAUNTED HOUSE

Ubi coepit advesperāscere,¹ Athēnodōrus poscit pugillārēs, stilum, lūmen²; suōs omnīs in interiōra dimittit; ipse ad scribendum animum, oculōs, manum intendit, nē vacua mēns³ sibi metūs fingeret. Initiō silentium⁴ noctis; deinde concuti ferrum, vincula movērī. Ille nōn tollere oculōs, nōn remittere stilum. Tum crēscere strepitus, appropinquāre et iam ut in limine, iam ut intrā limen audīrī. Respicit, videt nārrātam sibi imāginem. Stābat innuēbatque digitō similis vocantī.⁵ Athēnodōrus nōn morātus tollit lūmen et sequitur. Ībat illa⁶ lentō gradū⁷ quasi gravis vinculis in āream domūs, repente dilāpsa dēserit comitem. Dēsertus herbās⁸ et folia coācta signum locō pōnit. Posterō diē adiit magistrātus, monet ut illum locum effodi iubeant. Inveniuntur⁹ ossa īserta catēnīs; collēcta pūblicē sepeliuntur. Domus posteā mōnstrō caruit. — PLINY THE YOUNGER

VOCABULARY

pugillārēs, ium, m., <i>writing tablets</i>	intendō, 3, tendī, tentus, <i>direct</i>
stilus, ī, m., <i>stylus</i> , used for writing	(intention)
scribō, 3, scripsī, scriptus, <i>write</i>	concutiō, 3, cussī, cussus, <i>shake</i>
oculus, ī, m., <i>eye</i> (oculist)	(concussion)

<i>vinculum, ī, n., fetter</i>	<i>ārea, ae, f., court</i>
<i>līmen, inis, n., threshold</i>	<i>repente, suddenly</i>
<i>stō, 1. stetī, statum, stand</i>	<i>dīlābor, 3. lāpsus, glide away</i>
<i>innuō, 3. nuī, nūtum, beckon</i>	<i>comes, itis, m., f., companion</i>
<i>digitus, ī, m., finger</i>	<i>folium, folī, n., leaf</i>
<i>vocō, 1. call (vocation)</i>	<i>effodiō, 3. fōdī, fossus, dig up</i>
<i>lentus, a, um, slow</i>	<i>ōs, ossis, n., bone (ossify)</i>
<i>gradus, ūs, m., step (grade)</i>	<i>sepeliō, 4. īvī, sepultus, bury</i>
<i>quasi, as if</i>	<i>careō, 2. uī, itūrus, be free from</i>

NOTES

¹ *advesperāscere*: from *ad* + the stem found in *vesper* + *scō*, which denotes that the action is beginning. ² *lūmen*: synonym of *lūx*. ³ *mēns*: synonym of *animus*. ⁴ *silentium*: English derivative? ⁵ *vocantī*: take with *similis* and think of it as having the force of a noun. ⁶ *illa*: refers to *imāginem*. ⁷ *gradū*: answers the question "how" about *ībat*. ⁸ *herbās*: *turf*. ⁹ *inveniuntur*: *in* + *veniō*, *come upon*.

Observe that several of the principal verbs in the passage, such as *concutī*, are in the infinitive mood. This adds vividness and an air of animation to the narrative. They should be translated by the indicative mood. The infinitive thus used is called the historical infinitive. Observe also the omission of conjunctions.

EXERCISE XVIII

Grammar: A. 496: 540; 546; 580; 585. B. 337. 2. *a, f*; 286, 1; 288, 1; B; 314. 1; 318. G. 665; 666; 541; 585; 650; 654. H. 638, 1; 588, I, II; 600, II, 1; 642; 643; 644.

Inflection: *reperiō*: *iter*; *alter*; *īdem*.

Order of words: temporal clauses usually precede, and purpose clauses usually follow, the verb on which they depend.

Prescribed list:

<i>crēberrimē</i>	<i>redīsse</i>	<i>hospitium</i>	<i>portam</i>
<i>ignōtum</i>	<i>trāditum</i>	<i>ōrāre</i>	<i>priusquam</i>
<i>quendam</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>quoniam</i>	<i>quaesīsse</i>
<i>cōscendere</i>	<i>hospitem</i>	<i>paterētur</i>	<i>fūgisse</i>
<i>nāvigāsset</i>			

TWO STRANGE DREAMS, THROUGH ONE OF WHICH A
CRIME WAS DETECTED AND PUNISHED

Duo somnia crēberrimē commemorantur: ūnum dē Simōnide, qui,¹ cum ignōtum quendam prōiectum mortuum vīdisset eumque humāvisset habēretque in animō nāvem cōnsendere, monērī vīsus est nē id faceret ab eō quem sepultūrā affēcerat; sī nāvigāsset,² eum naufragiō esse peritūrum. Itaque Simōnidem redisse³; perīsse cēterōs,⁴ quī tum nāvigāscent.

Alterum ita trāditum est.⁵ Cum duo quīdam Arcades⁶ familiārēs iter ūnā facerent et Megaram⁷ vēnissent, alterum ad caupōnem dēvertisse,⁸ ad hospitem alterum. Vīsum esse⁹ in somnīs¹⁰ eī quī erat in hospitiō¹¹ illum alterum ūrāre ut subvenīret, quod¹² sibi ā caupōne interitus¹³ parārētur; eum prīmō perterritum somniō surrēxisse; dein¹⁴ cum sē collēgisset idque vīsum prō nihilō habendum esse dūxisset,¹⁵ recubuisse. Tum eī dormientī eundem illum vīsum esse rogāre ut, quoniam sibi¹⁶ vīvō nōn subvēnisset, mortem suam nē inultam¹⁷ esse paterētur; sē interfectum in plastrum ā caupōne esse coniectum; petere ut māne ad portam adesset, priusquam plastrum ex oppidō exiret. Hōc somniō eum commōtum, māne ad portam fuisse, quaesīsse ex bubulcō quid esset in plastrō; illum perterritum fūgisse, mortuum repertum esse; caupōnem, rē patefactā,¹⁸ poenās dedisse. — CICERO

VOCABULARY

<i>somnium, somnī, n., dream</i>	<i>surgō, 3, surrēxi, surrēctus, rise</i>
<i>commemorō, 1, relate</i>	<i>(surge)</i>
<i>morior, 3, mortuus, die (mortal)</i>	<i>colligō, 3, lēgi, lēctus, collect</i>
<i>humō, 1, bury</i>	<i>recumbō, 3, cubui, —, lie down</i>
<i>sepultūra, ae, f., burial</i>	<i>again</i>
<i>naufragium, naufra'gī, n., wreck</i>	<i>dormiō, 4, īvī, ītum, sleep (dormant)</i>
<i>pereō, 4, īi, itūrus, perish</i>	<i>plastrum, ī, n., cart</i>
<i>caupō, īnis, m., innkeeper</i>	<i>māne, early</i>
<i>subveniō, 4, vēni, ventum, come to</i>	<i>adsum, esse, fuī, —, be at hand</i>
<i>the aid of</i>	<i>bubulcus, ī, m., ploughman</i>

NOTES

¹ *qui*: take with *vīsus est*. ² *nāvigāsset*: indirect discourse dependent on *monērī*. ³ *redīsse*: indirect discourse dependent on *commemorantur*.
⁴ *cēterōs*: synonym of *reliqui*. ⁵ *trāditum est*: the story is told in indirect discourse dependent on this verb. ⁶ *Arcades*: *Greeks*. ⁷ *Megaram*: a town in Greece. ⁸ *dēvertisse*: *dē* + *vertō*. ⁹ *vīsum esse*: the principal verb in the sentence. ¹⁰ *somnīs*: synonym of *somnīs*. ¹¹ *hospitiō*: i.e. in his friend's house. ¹² *quod*: *because*. ¹³ *interitus*: synonym of *mors*. ¹⁴ *dein*: = *deinde*. ¹⁵ *dūxisset*: *had considered*. ¹⁶ *sibi*: for the case, consider *subvēnisset*. ¹⁷ *inultam*: compare *ulcīscor* and *in*, as in "inconvenient." ¹⁸ *patefactā*: *pateō* + *faciō*.

Study the use of the pronouns in the passage, and observe to which one of the three characters in the story each refers.

EXERCISE XIX

Grammar: A. 346; 367; 384; 580. B. 187, II, *a*; 192, I; 314, I. G. 346; 359; 650. H. 426, I; 434, 2; 642; 643.

Inflection: *possum*; *gēns*; *nūllus*; *qui*.

Order of words: the normal order of the sentence is: (1) subject; (2) modifiers of subject; (3) modifiers of verb; (4) verb. Changes in this order are due to emphasis.

Prescribed list:

<i>paucōs</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>ultimus</i>	<i>caput</i>
<i>statim</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>excēdēbat</i>	<i>stīpendiō</i>
<i>convertit</i>	<i>statiōnēs</i>	<i>meruit</i>	<i>impositō</i>
<i>redditum esse</i>	<i>peditum</i>	<i>statuit</i>	

THE CHARACTER OF HANNIBAL AND HIS ACTIVITY
IN SPAIN

Hannibal¹ post prīmū Pūnicū² bellū blandiēbat patriū Hamilcarī ut in Hispāniā dūcerētur. Dixit sē hostēm futūrum esse populō Rōmānō. Post paucōs annōs missus ēst Hannibal in Hispāniā. Statim omnēm exercitū in sē convertit. Hamilcarem iuvenem redditum esse sibi³ veterēs mīlitēs crēdidērunt. Et imperātōrī⁴ et exercitū cārus erat. Nūllō labōre aut corpus fatigārī⁵

aut animus vincī poterat. Multī saepe humī⁶ eum iacentem inter statiōnēs militum vidērunt. Equitum peditumque longē pīmus erat. Princeps in proelium ibat,⁷ ultimus ē proeliō excēdēbat. Trīs annōs sub Hasdrubale⁸ imperātōre meruit. Ex quō diē Hannibal dux dēclārātus est, Saguntinīs⁹ bellum īferre statuit. In Olcadum prius fīmī exercitum dūxit. Cartalam, caput gentis eius, expugnāvit. Minōrēs cīvitātēs, stipendiō impositō, imperium accēpērunt. Victor exercitus Carthāginem Novam in hiberna dēductus est. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

blandiō, 4. īvī, ītus, <i>coax</i>	cārus, a, um, <i>dear</i>
iuvēnis, is, m., f., <i>youth</i> (juvenile)	humus, ī, m., <i>ground</i>
crēdō, 3, dīdī, dītus, <i>believe</i>	iaceō, 2, uī, —, <i>lie</i>

NOTES

¹ Hannibal: famous leader of the Carthaginians in the second Punic war.
² Pūnicum: *Punic*. ³ sibi: refers to the subject of the principal verb.
⁴ imperātōri: imperō + tor. ⁵ fatigāri: English derivative? ⁶ humī: locative. ⁷ ibat: this tense expresses a customary action. ⁸ Hasdrubale: Hannibal's brother-in-law. ⁹ Saguntinīs: people of Saguntum, a large city of Spain. For the case, consider īferre.

The passage contains variations from the normal order of the sentence. Account for them.

EXERCISE XX

Grammar: A. 402; 506; 540; 546; 563. B. 214, 2; 338, 3; 286, 1; 288, 1, B; 295, 1. G. 390, 2; 432, R.; 540; 585; 546, 1. H. 464; 628; 588, 1; 600, II, 1; 565.

Inflection: ferō: agmen: gravis: hīc.

Order of words: the following arrangement of the parts of a predicate is common: ablative, indirect object, direct object, adverb, verb.

Prescribed list:

vī	aquām	cessisse	nōndum
adortī	quadrāgintā	sublātō	ōrārent
praedā	autem	priusquam	tunc
rīpam	dispōnit	praeter	sententia

HANNIBAL SUBDUES MANY MORE OF THE TRIBES
 OF SPAIN

Prīmō vēre in Vaccaeōs prōmōtum est¹ bellum. Hermandica et Arbocala, eōrum urbēs, vī captae sunt. Arbocala et virtūte et multitudine oppidānōrum² diū dēfēnsa est. Ab Hermandicā profugī concitā Carpētānōs et Hannibalem adortī haud procul Tagō flūmine agmen grave praedā³ turbāvērunt. Hannibal proeliō abstinuit, castrisque super rīpam positis, flūmen vadō trāiēcit.⁴ Equitibus monuit ut, cum hostīs ingressōs⁵ aquam vidērent, adorīrentur impeditū agmen. In rīpā elephantōs, quadrāgintā autem erant, dispōnit. Hostēs, quod metū⁶ cessisse crēdēbant Rōmānōs, clāmōre sublātō, sine ulliū imperiō in flūmen ruunt. Pars magna flūmine absūmpta est. Priusquam postrēmī ā tantō timōre recipērent animōs, Hannibal fugam ex rīpā fēcit vāstātisque agrīs intrā paucōs diēs hanc gentem quoque in dēditiōnem accēpit. Et iam omnia trāns Hibērum⁷ praeter Saguntīnōs Carthāginiēnsium⁸ erant. Cum Saguntīnīs bellum nōndum erat. Lēgātī ā Saguntīnis Rōmam missī sunt. Cōnsulēs tunc Rōmae erant Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō et Tiberius Semprōnius Longus. Cum lēgātī auxilium ad bellum iam imminēns ōrārent, Saguntum oppugnārī nūntiātum est. Tunc relāta est dē integrō⁹ rēs ad senātū. Haee sententia, quae optima vidēbātur, vīcit, lēgātique Saguntum ad Hannibalem missī sunt atque inde Carthāginem, sī nōn absisterētur¹⁰ bellō, ad ducem ipsum dēposcendum.¹¹ — LIVY

VOCABULARY

vēr, vēris, n., <i>spring</i> (vernal)	ingredior, 3. gressus, <i>enter</i>
profugus, ī, m., <i>exile</i>	crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>believe</i> (credit)
concitō, 1, <i>arouse</i>	ruō, 3, ruī, rutus, <i>rush</i>
haud, <i>not, not at all</i>	absūmō, 3, sūmpsi, sūmptus, <i>destroy</i>
procul, <i>far</i>	immineō, 2, uī, —, <i>threaten</i> (imminent)
turbō, 1, <i>throw into confusion</i>	integer, <i>gra, grum, fresh, whole</i> (integer)
abstineō, 2, uī, <i>tentus, refrain</i>	absistō, 3, stitī, —, <i>cease</i>
super, <i>upon</i>	

NOTES

¹ prōmōtum est: prō + moveō. ² oppidānōrum: from oppidum and the suffix ānus, *belonging to*. ³ praedā: take with grave. ⁴ trāiēcit: derivation? A synonym of trānseō. ⁵ ingressōs: understand esse. ⁶ metū: synonym of timor. It answers the question "why" about cessisse. ⁷ Hibērum: the largest river of northeastern Spain. ⁸ Carthāginiēnsium: the suffix is ēnsis, *belonging to*. A predicate genitive showing possession. ⁹ dē integrō: used adverbially. Compare dē imprōvisō. ¹⁰ absisterētur: used impersonally. ¹¹ déposcendum: = poscendum. This was to be done in order that he might be punished for breaking the treaty.

EXERCISE XXI

Grammar: A. 346, a, 2; 370; 412; 546. B. 201, 1; 187, 3; 220, 1; 288, 1, B. G. 369; 347; 399; 585. H. 442; 429; 473, 3; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: agō: turris; graviter (compare); is.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, follows the noun which it limits.

Prescribed list:

dum	succēdēbat	vulnērātus	coortum est
ultrā	dēlēcta	obsidiō	anceps
aggreditur	certāmine	cūrārētur	expellunt
adversus	cadēbant	operum	redigunt
vīneās			

THE FIERCE ATTACK ON SAGUNTUM, IN WHICH
HANNIBAL IS WOUNDED

Dum ea Rōmānī parant cōsultantque, iam Saguntum summā vī oppugnābātur. Cīvitās ea longē opulentissima ultrā Hibērum fuit. Hannibal, agrīs vāstātīs, urbem aggreditur. Adversus angulum mūrī vīneās agere īstituit, per quās ariēs moenibus¹ admovērī² posset.³ Nōn prōsperē⁴ autem coeptīs⁵ succēdēbant. Et turris ingēns imminēbat, et mūrus suprā cēterae⁶ modum⁷ altitūdinis mūnītus erat, et iuventūs dēlēcta, ubi plūrimum perīculī ac timōris ostendēbātur, ibi vī maiōre obsistēbat. In hōc certāmine haud ferē⁸ plūrēs Saguntinī cadēbant quam Poenī. Hannibal ipse adversum

femur trāgulā graviter vulnerātus cecidit. Obsidiō per paucōs diēs magis quam oppugnātiō fuit,⁹ dum¹⁰ vulnus ducis cūrārētur. Per quod tempus ut¹¹ quiēs certāminum erat, ita¹¹ ab apparātū operum ac mūnitiōnum nihil¹² cessātum est. Itaque ācrius dē integrō¹³ coortum est bellum. Multae partēs mūrī quassātae erant. Trēs turrēs quantumque inter eās mūrī erat cum fragōre ingentī prōcidērunt.¹⁴ Cum diū anceps fuisse certāmen, clāmōrem repente oppidānī¹⁵ tollunt hostemque in ruinās mūrī expellunt et postrēmō in castra redigunt. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

opulentus, a, um, <i>wealthy</i>	femur, feminis, n., <i>thigh</i>
urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>	trāgula, ae, f., <i>dart</i>
angulus, ī, m., <i>corner</i>	apparātus, ūs, m., <i>preparation</i>
ariēs, etis, m., <i>battering-ram</i>	cessō, ī, <i>cease</i>
ingēns, ingentis, <i>huge</i>	integer, gra, grum, <i>fresh</i>
immineō, 2, uī, —, <i>overhang</i>	quassō, ī, <i>shake</i>
suprā, <i>beyond</i>	fragor, ūris, m., <i>crash</i>
iuventūs, ūtis, f., <i>youth</i>	repente, <i>suddenly</i>
obsistō, 3, stitī, stitus, <i>stand in the way</i>	

NOTES

¹ moenibus: synonym of mūrus. For the case consider admovērī.
² admovērī: ad + moveō. ³ posset: shows the purpose of īstituit.
⁴ prōsperē: English derivative? ⁵ coeptis: participle of coepī used as a noun.
⁶ cēterae: synonym of reliquus. ⁷ modum: *limit*. ⁸ haud ferē: *hardly*.
⁹ fuit: *it was*. ¹⁰ dum: with the subjunctive, *until*. ¹¹ ut, ita: cor-
 relatives. ¹² nihil: adverbial accusative of degree. ¹³ dē integrō: used
 adverbially. Compare dē imprōvīsō. ¹⁴ prōcidērunt: prō + cadō. ¹⁵ oppi-
 dānī: from oppidum and the suffix ānus, *belonging to*.

Make a list of the phrases consisting of a noun and limiting genitive, and determine the emphatic word in each phrase.

EXERCISE XXII

Grammar: A. 404; 412; 531, 1; 540; 549. B. 219; 220, 1; 282, 1; 286, 1, 2. G. 408; 399; 545, 1; 540; 586. H. 475; 473, 3; 568; 588, 1; 598.

Inflection: respondeō; opus; minor; suus.

Order of words: the limiting word usually precedes the word which it limits, unless the latter is emphatic.

Prescribed list:

nūntius	vetus	adorta est	minuitur
lēgātiō	aliquot	simul	paulisper
inde	reficerent	inopia	profectiō
ortum	oppugnātiō	obsidiō	oppressi

HANNIBAL FORESTALLS THE ROMAN EMBASSY AND
THEN ATTACKS SAGUNTUM

Interim Rōmā lēgātōs vēnisse nūntiātum est. Appārēbat¹ eōs ab Hannibale nōn admissōs² prōtinus³ Carthāginem itūrōs esse. Litterās igitur⁴ nūntiōsque ad prīncipēs factiōnis⁵ Barcīnae⁶ prae-mittit Hannibal ut praeparent suōrum animōs. Itaque, praeter-quam quod⁷ admissī audītīque sunt, ea quoque vāna⁸ lēgātiō fuit. Hannō ūnus adversus senātūm causam foederis magnō silentiō propter auctōritātem suam nōn cum adsēnsū⁹ audientium ēgit. Respōnsum inde lēgātīs Rōmānīs est, bellum ortum ab Saguntīnīs, nōn ab Hannibale esse; populum Rōmānum iniūstē¹⁰ facere, sī Saguntīnōs vetustissimae Carthāginiēnsium societātī praepōnat.¹¹ Hannibal, quia fessōs¹² militēs proeliīs operibusque habēbat, paucō-rum iīs diērum quiētem dedit. Saguntīnī ut ā proeliīs quiētem habue-rant per aliquot diēs, ita nōn nocte, nōn diē umquam cessāverant ab opere, ut novum mūrum ab eā parte quā patefactum¹³ oppidum erat reficerent. Inde oppugnātiō ācīor quam ante eōs adorta est. Utrīque summā vī et mūniunt et pugnant; sed interiōra¹⁴ tuendō minōrem in diēs¹⁵ urbē Saguntīnī faciunt. Simul crēscit¹⁶ inopia omnium longā obsidiōne et minuitur exspectatiō externae opis, cum

tam procul Rōmānī, ūnica¹⁷ spēs, essent. Paulisper tamen animōs recreāvit¹⁸ repentina profectiō Hannibalis in Ōrētānōs Carpētānōsque, quī duo populi oppressi eius celeritātē omisērunt mōta arma. Postrēmō ad ipsam arcem ductus est exercitus, atrōxque proelium cum multōrum utrimque caede¹⁹ initum²⁰ et pars arcis capta est. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

appāreō, 2, uī, —, <i>appear</i> (ap-	urbs, <i>urbis</i> , f., <i>city</i> (suburban)
parent)	(ops), <i>opis</i> , f., <i>aid</i>
praeterquam, <i>except</i>	procul, <i>far away</i>
foedus, <i>eris</i> , n., <i>treaty</i>	repentīnus, a, um, <i>sudden</i>
silentium, <i>silentī</i> , n., <i>silence</i>	omittō, 3, mīsī, <i>missus</i> , <i>give up</i>
umquam, <i>ever</i>	arx, <i>arcis</i> , f., <i>citadel</i>
cessō, 1, <i>cease</i>	atrōx, <i>atrōcis</i> , <i>dreadful</i> (atrocious)
tueor, 2, <i>tuitus</i> or <i>tūtus</i> , <i>protect</i>	

NOTES

¹ appārēbat: impersonal. ² admissōs: English derivative? ³ prōtinus: synonym of *statim*. ⁴ igitur: synonym of *itaque*. ⁵ factiōnis: English derivative? ⁶ Barcīnae: adjective. The Barca family, to which Hannibal belonged, was the most powerful in Carthage. ⁷ quod: *the fact that*. ⁸ vāna: synonym of *vacuus*. ⁹ adsēnsū: ad + sentiō + tus. English derivative? ¹⁰ iniūstē: adverb. ¹¹ praepōnat: *prae*, *before*. ¹² fessōs: = dēfessōs. ¹³ patefactum: *pateō* + *faciō*. ¹⁴ interiōra: object of *tuendō*. ¹⁵ in diēs: *day by day*. ¹⁶ crēscit: think of the meaning of *augeō*. Crēscō is intransitive. ¹⁷ ūnica: synonym of *sōlus*. ¹⁸ recreāvit: *re* + *creō*, here *restore*. ¹⁹ caede: from the stem of *caedō*, *kill*. ²⁰ initum: understand est.

Find examples in the passage for the rules on the order of words.

EXERCISE XXIII

Grammar: A. 483; 484, 1, 2; 546; 584; 585. B. 267, 1, 2; 288, 1, B; 317; 270, 1, a, b, c; 318. G. 509, 1; 510; 585; 530; 531; 654. H. 543; 544; 545, I, II; 600, II, 1; 644.

Inflection: temptō; rēs; adfīrmāns; suī.

Order of words: when a noun is modified by both an adjective and a genitive, the order often is adjective, genitive, noun, the precise arrangement being determined by emphasis.

Prescribed list:

postquam	redderent	hospitiō	admit
lacrimae	concurrus	adferō	inermēs
mānsit	generis	aliquis	bīnīs

ALCO AND ALORCUS TRY TO BRING ABOUT PEACE
THE SPEECH OF ALORCUS

Temptāta deinde per duōs est exigua¹ pācis spēs, Alcōnem Saguntīnum et Alorcum Hispānum. Alcō, cum ad Hannibalem noctū trānsīset, postquam nihil lacrimae movēbant, trānsfuga ex ōrātōre² factus, apud hostem mānsit, eum³ moritūrum esse adfirmāns qui sub condicōnibus iīs dē pāce ageret. Postulābātur autem redderent⁴ rēs Turdētānīs,⁵ trāditōque omnī aurō atque argentō, ēgressī urbe ibi habitārent⁶ ubi Poenus iussisset. Alorcus sē pācis eius interpretem fore pollicētur. Erat autem tum miles Hannibal, sed pūblicē Saguntīnīs amīcus. Cum concursus omnis generis⁷ hominum esset factus, senātus Alorcō datus est, cuius tālis ōrātiō fuit: “Ego prō vetustō⁸ hospitiō, quod mihi⁹ vōbiscum est, ad vōs vēnī. Neque dum vestrīs vīribus restitistis neque dum auxilia ab Rōmānīs spērāstis, pācis apud vōs mentiōnem fēcī. Postquam nec ab Rōmānīs vōbīs ūlla est spēs nec vestra vōs iam aut arma aut moenia¹⁰ satis dēfendunt, pācem adferō ad vōs magis necessāriam quam aequam. Cuius¹¹ ita aliqua spēs est, si eam, quem ad modum ut victor fert¹² Hannibal, sīc vōs ut victī audiētis. Urbem, quam captam ferē tōtam habet, admit, agrōs relinquīt. Aurum et argentum omne pūblicum pīvātumque ad sē iubet dēferri. Corpora vestra, coniugum, ac liberōrum vestrōrum servat inviolāta, sī inermēs cum bīnīs vestīmentis velītis ab Saguntō exīre. Haec victor hostis imperat; haec, quamquam sunt gravia, fortūna vestra vōbīs suādet. Evidēt haud dēspērō,¹³ cum omnium potestās cī facta sit, aliquid ex his rēbus remissūrum.” — Livy

VOCABULARY

trānsfuga, ae, m., f., <i>deserter</i>	servō, i, <i>preserve</i>
morior, morī, mortuus, <i>die</i>	vestimentum, i, n., <i>garment</i>
aurum, ī, n., <i>gold</i>	suādeō, 2, suāsī, suāsum, <i>advise</i>
argentum, ī, n., <i>silver</i>	quamquam, <i>although</i>
urbs, urbīs, f., <i>city</i>	equidem, <i>indeed</i>
interp̄es, etis, m., f., <i>messenger</i>	haud, <i>not</i>
coniunx, ugis, m., f., <i>husband, wife</i>	

NOTES

¹ *exigua*: synonym of *parvus*. ² *ōrātōre*: *ōrō* + *tor*. English derivative?

³ *eum*: *that man*. ⁴ *redderent*: understand *ut*. ⁵ *Turdētānīs*: a tribe in southwestern Spain. ⁶ *habitārent*: think of an English derivative with a prefix. ⁷ *generis*: genitive of quality. ⁸ *vetustō*: synonym of *vetus*.
⁹ *mihi*: dative of the possessor. Translate into English by the nominative case, and render *est* by the appropriate form of *have*. ¹⁰ *moenia*: synonym of *mūrus*. ¹¹ *cuius*: its antecedent is *pācem*. ¹² *fert*: *offers*.
¹³ *dēspērō*: *dē* + *spērō*.

In the following phrases determine the reason for the position of each word: *exigua pācis spēs*; *trāditō omni aurō*; *pācis eius interpretem*; *concurſus omnis generis hominum*; *vōbīs ūlla est spēs*.

EXERCISE XXIV

Grammar: A. 413; 531; 537, 1; 573; 574. B. 222; 282, 1; 284, 1; 300, 1. G. 392; 543, 1; 545, 1; 452, 2; 467. H. 473, 1; 568; 570; 649, II.

Inflection: *dēfendō*; *vīs*; *magis* (compare); *ipse*.

Order of words: a relative clause usually follows the clause which contains the antecedent of the relative.

Prescribed list:

priusquam	rettulērunt	peditum	marī
respondeō	summā	octingentī	sescentīs
aggressus	cōnsulerent	centum	comparātīs
praedā	ēvēnit	sexāgintā	dīmicātūrum
redierant	sēdecim	maritimus	

THE FALL OF SAGUNTUM ALARMS THE ROMANS AND
AROUSES THEM TO GREATER ACTIVITY

Priusquam respōnsum¹ darētur, tumultus ex arce auditur. Turris diū quassāta prōciderat,² perque ruīnam eius Hannibal tōtis vīribus aggressus urbem mōmentō³ capit,⁴ signō datō ut omnēs pūberēs interficerentur. Captum oppidum est cum ingentī praedā. Sub idem ferē tempus et lēgātī, qui redierant ab Carthāgine, Rōmam rettulērunt omnia hostīlia⁵ esse, et Saguntī excidium nūntiātum est; tantaque īra in Carthāginiēnsis metusque⁶ dē summā rērum cēpit, ut animī turbātī timērent magis quam cōnsulerent. Nōminātæ iam anteā cōnsulibus prōvinciae erant.⁷ Cornēliō⁸ Hispānia, Semprōniō Āfrica cum Siciliā ēvēnit. Inter cōsulēs ita cōpiae divīsae: Semprōniō datae legiōnēs duae et sociōrum sēdecim mīlia peditum, equitēs mille octingentī, nāvēs longae centum sexāgintā. Cum hīs terrestrībus maritimīsque cōpiīs Tiberius Semprōnius in Siciliā missus est. Cornēliō minus cōpiārum datum est, quia Lūcius Manlius praetor⁹ et ipse cum haud invalidō¹⁰ praeṣidiō in Galliam mittēbātur. Nāvium maximē Cornēliō numerus dēminūtus est. Neque enim marī ventūrum aut eā parte bellī dīmīcātūrum hostem crēdēbant. Datae sunt duae legiōnēs Rōmānae cum suō iūstō equitātū et quattuordecim mīlibus sociōrum peditum, equitibus mīlle sescentis. His ita comparātīs, ut omnia iūsta ante bellum fierent, lēgātōs in Āfricam mīsērunt ut cognōscerent pūblicōne¹¹ cōnsiliō Hannibal Saguntum oppugnāvisset, et, si id fatērentur ac dēfenderent, ut indīcerent populō Carthāginiēnsī bellum. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*

quassō, 1, *shake*

pūberēs, um, m., *adults*

ingēns, ingentis, *enormous*

excidium, exci'dī, n., *downfall*

īra, ae, f., *wrath* (ire)

turbō, 1, *disturb* (turbulent)

terrestris, e, *of the land*

haud, *not, by no means*

dēminuō, 3. uī, ūtus, *diminish*

crēdō, 3, didī, *ditus, believe*

iūstus, a, um, *appropriate*

fateor, 2, fassus, *acknowledge*

indīcō, 3. dīxī, *dictus, declare*

NOTES

¹ *respōnsum*: a noun. ² *prōciderat*: *prō* + *cadō*. ³ *mōmentō*: English derivative? ⁴ *capit*: historical present. ⁵ *hostilia*: *hostis* + *ilis*, *belonging to*. ⁶ *metus*: synonym of *timor*. ⁷ *erant*: with *nōminātae*. ⁸ *Cornēliō*: Scipio. ⁹ *praetor*: one of the chief magistrates of Rome. ¹⁰ *invalidō*: *in* + *validus* from *valeō*. ¹¹ *pūblicōne*: note the particle.

This passage contains clauses of purpose and of result. Do they follow or precede the verbs on which they depend? Which is an exception? Account for its position.

EXERCISE XXV

Grammar: A. 346, *c*; 419, *a*; 546; 573; 574. B. 201, 1, *a*; 227, 1; 288, 1, B; 300, 1. G. 372, R. 2; 409; 585; 452, 2; 467. H. 444; 489; 600, II, 1; 649, II.

Inflection: *volō*; *pater*; *pūblicus*; *tū*.

Order of words: indirect questions commonly follow the clause on which they depend.

Prescribed list:

postquam	utrum	auctōritāte	sūmite
mandātum erat	iūre	portāmus	iterum
quaesīvisset	licuerit		

THE EMBASSY TO CARTHAGE DOES NOT AVERT
THE WAR

Rōmānī postquam Carthāginem vēnērunt, cum senātus datus esset et Quīntus Fabius lēgātus nihil quam ūnum quod mandātum erat quaesīvisset, tum ex Carthāginiēnsibus ūnus: "Ego nōn pīvātō pūblicōne cōnsiliō Saguntum oppugnātum sit quaerendum¹ cēnseō, sed utrum iūre an iniūriā. Nostra enim haec quaestīō est, quid imperātor nostrō aut suō fēcerit arbitriō. Vōbiscum ūna disceptātiō est, licueritne per foedus fierī. Vōs quod Gāius Lutātius cōnsul pīmō nōbiscum foedus² īcit, quia neque ex auctōritāte patrum nec populi iussū ictum erat, negāvistis vōs eō tenērī; itaque aliud dē integrō³ foedus pūblicō cōnsiliō ictum est. Sī vōs nōn

tenent foedera vestra nisi ex auctōritāte aut iussū vestrō icta, nē nōs quidem⁴ Hasdrubalis foedus, quod nōbīs īsciūs⁵ īcit,⁶ obligārē⁷ potuit. Omittite⁸ Saguntī atque Hibērī mentiōnem facere, et quod diū parturit animus vester aliquandō pariat.⁹ Tum Rōmānus, sinū ex togā factō, "Hic," inquit, "vōbīs bellum et pācem por-tāmus; utrum placet, sūmīte." Tum succlāmātum¹⁰ est, daret¹¹ utrum vellet. Et cum is, iterum sinū effūsō, bellum dare dixisset, accipere sē omnēs respondērunt. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

cēnseō, 2, uī, us, <i>be of opinion</i>	integer, gra, grum, <i>fresh</i>
quaestio, īnis, f., <i>inquiry</i> (question)	parturiō, 4, īvī, —, <i>desire to bring forth, meditate</i>
arbitrium, arbi'trī, n., <i>decision</i>	aliquandō, <i>at length</i>
disceptātiō, īnis, f., <i>discussion</i>	sinus, ūs, m., <i>fold</i> (sinuous)
foedus, eris, n., <i>treaty</i>	inquam (defective verb), <i>say</i>
īcō, 3, īcī, ictus, <i>strike</i> , (with foedus) make	placeō, 2, uī, itum, <i>please</i>
quia, <i>because</i>	effundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, <i>empty</i>
negō, 1, <i>say "no," deny</i> (negative)	

NOTES

¹ *quaerendum*: indirect discourse after cēnseō; the subject is the preceding clause. ² *foedus*: placed in the relative clause for emphasis. Translate with eō. ³ dē integrō: *afresh*. Compare dē imprōcīsō. ⁴ nē . . . quidem: the emphatic word stands between. ⁵ īsciūs: in + sciō. ⁶ īcit: subject refers to Hasdrubalis. ⁷ obligārē: *bind*. ⁸ omittite: English derivative? ⁹ pariat: *let it bring forth*, a subjunctive of exhortation. ¹⁰ succlāmātum: synonym of exclāmō. ¹¹ daret: this was an imperative in the words of the Carthaginians.

Explain the derivation of *quaestio*, *imperātor*, *auctōritāte*.



A ROMAN COIN

EXERCISE XXVI

Grammar: A. 370; 413; 580; 584. B. 187, III; 222; 314, 1; 270, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*; 317. G. 347; 392; 650; 653; 531. H. 429; 473, 1; 642; 643; 617.

Inflection: proficīscor; gladius; omnis; quī.

Order of words: a relative pronoun often stands first in a sentence because its antecedent is in the preceding sentence.

Prescribed list:

servitūtis	praeter	vigiliā	rīpā
moram	vixdum	tergō	dextris
loquī	occurreret	adoriātur	anceps
hospitem	āverteret	ēditō	vīcōs
enim			

HANNIBAL ON HIS MARCH TRIES TO CONCILIATE THE GAULS, BUT IS OPPOSED BY A POWERFUL TRIBE

Hannibal cum magnis cōpiis Pŷrēnaeum¹ trānsreditur et castra pōnit. Galli, quamquam Ītaliae² bellum īferrī audiēbant, tamen quia fāma³ erat Hispānōs trāns Pŷrēnaeum vī subāctōs esse, metū⁴ servitūtis ad arma cōsternātī⁵ conveniunt. Quod ubi Hannibalī nūntiātum est, moram magis quam bellum metuēns⁶ ḫrātōrēs⁷ ad eōs mīsit, loquī sē cum iīs velle, et acceptūrum eōs in castra sua; hospitem⁸ enim sē Galliae, nōn hostem vēnisce, nec strictūrum esse gladium, sī per Gallōs licēret, antequam⁹ in Ītaliā vēnisset. Interim Pūblius Cornēlius, dux Rōmānus, profectus ab urbe sexāgintā longīs nāvibus praeter ḫram Etrūriae¹⁰ pervenit Massiliām¹¹ et castra pōnit, vixdum satis crēdēns Hannibalem superāvisse Pŷrēnaeōs montīs. Quem ut dē Rhodanī quoque trānsitū¹² agitāre cognōvit, incertus in quō locō eī occurreret, trecentōs equitēs ad explōranda omnia praemittit. Hannibal iam in Volcārum pervēnerat agrum, gentīs validae.¹³ Ingēns vīs nāvium coācta est. Omnibus rēbus satis comparātīs ad trāiciendum¹⁴ terrēbant ex adversō hostēs. Quōs ut āverteret Hannibal Hannōnem vigiliā pīmā noctis cum

parte cōpiārum adversō flūmine īre iter ūnius diēi iubet et trāiectō flūmine circumdūcere agmen ut hostis ā tergō adoriātur. Posterō diē profecti ex locō ēditō fūmō significant trānsisse et haud procul¹⁵ abesse. Quod ubi accēpit, Hannibal nāvibus lintribusque cōpiās flūmen trādūcit. Galli occursant in rīpā, quatientēs scūta super capita, vibrantēs dextris tēla. Mox et¹⁶ ipse Hannō aderat, anceps terror circumstābat. Galli perrumpunt et in vīcōs suōs diffugint.¹⁷ — LIVY

VOCABULARY

trāns̄gredior, 3, gressus, <i>cross</i>	linter, tris, f., <i>skiff</i>
quamquam, <i>although</i>	occursō, 1, <i>oppose</i>
quia, <i>because</i>	quatiō, 3, ——, quassus, <i>shake</i>
subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, <i>compel</i>	super, <i>above</i>
stringō, 3, strīnxī, <i>strictus, draw</i>	vibrō, 1, <i>brandish (vibrate)</i>
ōra, ae, f., <i>coast</i>	mox, <i>presently</i>
crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>believe (credible)</i>	circumstō, 1, stetī, ——, <i>stand around</i>
gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe</i>	perrumpō, 3, rūpī, <i>ruptus, break through</i>
ingēns, ingentis, <i>huge</i>	
terreō, 2, uī, itus, <i>alarm</i>	
fūmus, ī, m., <i>smoke (fume)</i>	

NOTES

¹ Pȳrēnaeum: the Pyrenees mountains. ² Ītaliae: for the case, consider īferri. ³ fāma: synonym of rūmor. English derivative? ⁴ metū: synonym of timor. ⁵ cōsternātī: synonym of commoveō. ⁶ metuēns: compare metū above. ⁷ ḫrātōrēs: ḫrō + tor, *intercessors*. The following indirect discourse depends upon the idea of saying implied in this word. ⁸ hospitem: contrasted with hostem. Notice the emphasis. ⁹ antequam: synonym of priusquam. ¹⁰ Etrūriae: northwest of Rome. ¹¹ Massiliām: Marseilles. ¹² trānsitū: trāns + eō + tus, *act of*. ¹³ validae: derived from the verb valeō. ¹⁴ trāiciendum: trāns + iaciō. ¹⁵ haud procul: *by no means far*. ¹⁶ et: *also*. ¹⁷ diffugint: dis + fugiō.

EXERCISE XXVII

Grammar: A. 208, *d*; 418; 452, 1; 531, 2. B. 256, 3; 226; 329; 330; 282, 2. G. 208, 2; 397; 422; 630. H. 302, 6; 480; 615, 1; 590.

Inflection: *pōnō*; *animal*; *īnferior*; *quis*.

Order of words: clauses of purpose and result commonly follow the clause on which they depend.

Prescribed list:

quīngentōs	via	prope	regiōne
trecentī	quārtīs	inde	propinquō
occurrunt	incolunt	īnferior	renovāvērunt

HANNIBAL ADVANCES TOWARD THE PASSAGE OF
THE ALPS

Hannibal Numidās equitēs quīngentōs ad castra Rōmāna mīserat, quī cognōscerent ubi et quantae cōpiae essent et quid parārent. Huic ālāe equitum trecentī Rōmānōrum equitēs occurrunt. Ācriter pugnātum est. Fuga Numidārum Rōmānīs victōriam dedit. Rē ita gestā, Hannibal Ītaliā petere cōstituit. Profectus adversā rīpā Rhodanī mediterrānea Galliae petit, nōn quia rēctior ad Alpīs via esset, sed quia cum Rōmānīs, priusquam in Ītaliā vēnisset, nōn erat in animō proelium committere. Quārtīs castrīs ad īnsulam pervēnit. Incolunt prope Allobrogēs, gēns iam inde nūllā Gallicā gente¹ opībus aut fāmā² īferior. Cum iam Alpīs Hannibal peteret, nōn rēctā regiōne³ iter īstituit, sed ad laevam⁴ in Tricastīnōs flexit. Inde Alpīs pervēnit. Tum ex propinquō vīsa montium altitūdō nivēsque caelō prope immixtae, hominēs intōnsi et incultī, animālia inanimaque omnia rigidia gelū, terrōrem renovāvērunt. Hannibal cōsistere signa iussit. Gallis ad vīsenda loca praemissīs, castra pōnit. — Livy

VOCABULARY

āla, ae, f., <i>squadron</i>	rēctus, a, um, <i>straight</i> (rectify)
mediterrānea, īrum, n., <i>interior</i>	gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe</i>
quia, <i>because</i>	(ops), opis, f., <i>resources</i>

flectō, 3, flexī, flexus, <i>turn</i>	inanimus, a, um, <i>lifeless</i> (inanimate)
nix, nivis, f., <i>snow</i>	rigēō, 2, uī, —, <i>be stiff</i> (rigid)
caelum, ī, n., <i>sky</i>	gelū, ūs, n., <i>cold</i> (congeal)
intōnsus, a, um, <i>rude</i>	vīsō, 3, vīsī, vīsus, <i>look at</i>
incultus, a, um, <i>wild</i>	

NOTES

¹ gente: for the case, consider inferior. ² fāmā: English derivative?
³ regiōne: *direction*. ⁴ laevam: synonym of *sinister*.

Explain the derivation of *pervēnit*, *altitūdō*, *inanima*, *praemissīs*.

EXERCISE XXVIII

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3: 405, N. 3: 424, a: 537, N. 2. B. 201, 2; 216, 1; 181, 2; 284, 1. G. 372: 401, R. 2: 336; 552, end. H. 442; 468, 1: 417, 1; 570.

Inflection: mālō; saxum: *alius*; ipse.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word usually stands first.

Prescribed list:

lūce	inde	īnsidiīs	undique
castellīs	cibō	experīrī	fronte
simul	pecoribus	temerē	tergō
vulnerātī	apertō	rōbore	coortī

HANNIBAL ATTEMPTS THE CROSSING OF THE ALPS, BUT IS ATTACKED BY THE MOUNTAINEERS

Prīmā deinde lūce castra mōvit. Montānī signō datō ex castellis conveniēbant. Tum vērō simul ab hostibus, simul ab inīquitatē¹ locōrum Poenī oppugnābantur. Equī maximē īfēstum agmen faciēbant, quī territī trepidābant et ictī forte aut vulnerātī adeō cōsternābantur ut strāgem ingentem simul hominum ac sarcinārum omnis generis² facerent. Stetit parumper Hannibal ac suōs continuuit, nē tumultum ac trepidatiōnem³ augēret. Castellum inde, quod caput eius regiōnis erat, vīculōsque circumiectōs cēpit, et captivō⁴ cibō ac pecoribus per trīdūm exercitūm aluit. Perventum

inde est ad alium populum. Ibi nōn bellō apertō, sed fraude⁵ et īnsidiis est prope circumventus. Prīcipēs castellōrum īrātōrēs⁶ ad Poenum veniunt memorantēs⁷ amīcitiam mālle quam vim experīrī Poenōrum; itaque imperāta factūrōs esse. Hannibal nec temerē crēdendum⁸ ratus,⁹ benignē cum respondisset, obsidibus quōs dabant acceptīs et commeātū quem in viam ipsī dētulerant ūsus, nēquāquam ut inter pācātōs, compositō¹⁰ agmine, ducēs eōrum sequitur. Prīmum agmen elephantī et equitēs erant; ipse post cum rōbore peditum incēdēbat.¹¹ Ubi in angustiōrem viam vēnērunt, undique ex īnsidiis barbarī ā fronte, ab tergō coortī comminus ēminus petunt,¹² saxa ingentia in agmen dēvolvunt. Tunc quoque ad extrēmum perīculi ac prope perniciem vēnērunt. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

montānus, ī, m., <i>mountaineer</i>	parumper, <i>for a little while</i>
īnfēstus, a, um, <i>unsafe</i>	tumultus, ūs, m., <i>uprising</i>
terreō, 2, uī, itus, <i>frighten</i>	vīculus, ī, m., <i>hamlet</i>
trepidō, 1, <i>be in alarm</i>	alō, 3, uī, tus or itus, <i>feed</i>
īcō, 3. īcī, ictus, <i>strike</i>	mālō, mālle, māluī, —, <i>prefer</i>
forte, <i>by chance</i>	crēdō, 3, didī, dītus, <i>believe</i> (creed)
adeō, <i>to such a degree</i>	benignē, <i>in a kindly way</i>
cōnsternō, 1, <i>terrify</i>	nēquāquam, <i>by no means</i>
strāgēs, is, f., <i>destruction</i>	comminus, <i>hand to hand</i>
ingēns, ingentis, <i>huge</i>	ēminus, <i>from a distance</i>
sarcinae, ārum, f., <i>packs</i>	dēvolvō, 3, volvī, volūtus, <i>roll down</i>
stō, 1, stetī, statum, <i>stand</i>	perniciēs, ēī, f., <i>ruin</i> (pernicious)

NOTES

¹ īnīquitatē: in + aequus + tās. ² generis: shows quality. ³ trepidātiōnem: trepidō + tiō. ⁴ captivō: *captured*. ⁵ fraude: English derivative? ⁶ īrātōrēs: īrō + tor. ⁷ memorantēs: = dīcentēs. ⁸ crēdendum: understand *esse*. The subject refers to the preceding statement. ⁹ ratus: participle of reor, a synonym of putō. ¹⁰ compositō: con + pōnō. ¹¹ incēdēbat: = prōcēdēbat. ¹² petunt: *attack*.

Select phrases from the passage and note the emphasis expressed by the arrangement of the words in each phrase.

EXERCISE XXIX

Grammar: A. 293; 423, 2; 579; 580; 584. B. 241, 1; 181, 1; 313; 314, 1; 317. G. 291, R. 2; 336; 648; 650; 653. H. 497, 4; 417; 641; 642; 643; 644.

Inflection: iubēō; pedes; lātē (compare); quisquam.

Order of words: words are arranged in clauses or sentences in the order of their importance in the mind of the writer.

Prescribed list:

cunctātūr	nōnō	unde	praeceps
angustiās	iugum	cōsistere	mēnse
praesidiō	bīduum	modo	cōstat
peditibūs	quōdam	prōcēdere	

HANNIBAL REACHES THE SUMMIT OF THE ALPS AND
DESCENDS INTO ITALY

Dum cunctātūr¹ Hannibal dēmittere² agmen in angustiās, quia³ nōn, ut ipse equitibus praesidiō erat, ita peditibus quicquam ab tergō auxili reliquī erat, montānī⁴ per obliqua⁵ occursantēs, interruptō mediō agmine, viam īsēdēre, noxque ūna Hannibali sine equitibus atque impedimentis ācta est. Nōnō diē in iugum Alpium pervēnērunt. Bīduum in iugō statīva habita,⁶ fessīsque⁷ labōre ac pugnandō quiēs data est militibus. Hannibal praegressus signa in prōmunturiō quōdam, unde longē ac lātē prōspectus erat, cōsistere iussīs mīlitibus Italiam ostentat et dīcit eōs moenia⁸ tum trāscendere nōn Italiae modo sed etiam urbis Rōmānae; ūnō proeliō arcem et caput Italiae in manū ac potestātē eōs habitūrōs esse. Prōcēdere inde agmen coepit. Omnis ferē via praeceps, angusta erat, ut sustinēre sē ā lāpsū nōn possent. Hōc modō in Italiam perventum est, quīntō mēnse ā Carthāgine Novā,⁹ ut quīdam auctōrēs sunt, quīntō decimō diē Alpibus superātis. Quantae cōpiae Hannibali¹⁰ fuerint, nēquāquam inter auctōrēs cōnstat. Quī plūrīmum, centum mīlia peditum, vīgintī equitum fuisse scribunt; quī¹¹ minimum, vīgintī mīlia peditum, sex equitum. — Livy

VOCABULARY

occursō, 1, <i>rush against</i>	arx, arcis, f., <i>citadel</i>
īnsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, <i>occupy</i>	lāpsus, ūs, m., <i>slipping (relapse)</i>
statīva, ūrum, n., <i>stationary camp</i>	auctor, ūris, m., <i>author, writer</i>
praegredior, 3, gressus, <i>advance</i>	nēquāquam, <i>by no means</i>
trānscedō, 3, scendī, scēnsus, <i>climb</i>	scribō, 3, scripsī, scriptus, <i>write</i>
over	

NOTES

¹ cunctātur: *dum, while*, is regularly followed by the present indicative. What tense is required in the translation? ² dēmittere: for the meaning, observe the composition. ³ quia: = *quod*. ⁴ montāni: mōns + ānus, *pertaining to*. ⁵ per obliqua: used adverbially. Compare dē imprōvisō. ⁶ habita: supply *sunt*. ⁷ fessīs: = dēfessīs. ⁸ moenia: referring to the Alps. ⁹ Carthāgine Novā: a city in Spain. ¹⁰ Hannibali: dative of the possessor. Translate it as the subject of the appropriate form of the verb *have*. ¹¹ qui: understand scribunt.

Explain the derivation of *potestāte, sustinēre, auctōrēs*.

EXERCISE XXX

Grammar: A. 374, a; 375; 406; 412; 504. B. 189, 1, 2: 217, 1; 220, 1; 338, 1, a. G. 354; 355; 398; 399; 428. H. 431, 2; 471; 473, 3; 626.

Inflection: ferō; nāvis; habēns; ego.

Order of words: the beginning of the sentence is usually the place of emphasis.

Prescribed list:

locūtus esse	occurristis	quōcumque	statuit
dextrā	imposuit	rōboris	potius
maria	praemia	praetereā	iterum
urgent	aestāte	superbissima	

AFTER DESCENDING THE ALPS INTO ITALY HANNIBAL
ADDRESSES HIS SOLDIERS

Cōtiōne inde advocātā¹ ita apud mīlītēs Hannibal locūtus esse fertur²: "Dextrā laevāque³ duo maria claudunt nūllam nē ad effugium⁴ quidem nāvem nōs habentīs; circā⁵ Padus flūmen, Padus

maior ac violentior⁶ Rhodanō, ab tergō Alpēs urgent, vix integrīs vōbīs trānsitae. Hīc⁷ vincendum⁸ aut moriendum, mīlitēs, est, ubi prīmum hostī occurristis. Et eadem fortūna quae necessitātem pugnandī imposuit, ea⁹ praemīa vōbīs victōribus prōpōnit quibus¹⁰ ampliōra hominēs nē ab deīs quidem immortālibus optāre¹¹ solent. Hīc vōbīs terminum labōrum fortūna dedit. Pugnābitis cum exercitū tīrōne, hāc ipsā aestāte victō ā Gallīs. Quōcumque circumtulī oculōs,¹² plēna omnia videō animōrum ac rōboris, veterānum peditem, generōsissimārum gentium equitēs, vōs sociōs fidēlissimōs¹³ fortissimōsque, vōs, Carthāginiēnsēs, cum prō patriā tum ob īram iūstissimam pugnātūrōs. Īferimus bellum īfēstīsque signis dēscendimus in Ītaliā. Accendit¹⁴ praetereā et stimulat animōs dolor,¹⁵ iniūria, indignitās. Crūdēlissima ac superbissima gēns sua¹⁶ omnia facit. Circumscribīt inclūditque¹⁷ nōs terminīs montium flūminumque quōs nōn excēdāmus, neque eōs quōs statuit terminōs observat. Duōs cōnsulēs huius anni, ūnum in Āfricā, alterum in Hispāniā mīsērunt. Nihil ūsquām nōbīs relictum est nisi quod armīs vindicāverimus. Vōbīs necesse est fortibus viris esse et aut vincere, aut, sī fortūna dubitābit, in proeliō potius quam in fugā mortem oppetere.¹⁸ Si hoc bene fixum omnibus est, iterum dīcam, vīcīstis. Nūllum ācrius contemptū¹⁹ mortis tēlum ad vincendum hominī ab deīs immortālibus datum est.” — LIVY

VOCABULARY

cōntiō, ūnis, m., <i>assembly</i>	īra, ae, f., <i>wrath</i> (irate)
claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, <i>shut in</i>	īnfēstus, a, um, <i>hostile</i>
integer, gra, grum, <i>fresh</i>	accendō, 3. dī, accēnsus, <i>kindle</i>
mōrōr, mōrī, mortuus, <i>die</i>	crūdēlis, e, <i>cruel</i>
deus, ī, m., <i>god</i>	circumscribō, 3, scripsī, scriptus, <i>confine</i>
soleō, 2, solitus, <i>be accustomed</i>	ūsquām, <i>anywhere</i>
tīrō, ūnis, m., <i>recruit</i> : as adj., <i>newly levied</i>	vīdicō, 1, <i>defend</i>
plēnus, a, um, <i>full</i> (plenty)	necesse (indeclinable), <i>necessary</i>
generōsus, a, um, <i>excellent</i>	figō, 3, fixī, <i>fixus, establish</i>
gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe</i>	

NOTES

¹ *advocatā*: notice the composition. ² *fertur*: *is said*. ³ *laevā*: synonym of *sinister*. ⁴ *effugium*: *ex + fugiō + ium, act of*. ⁵ *circā*: adverb, synonymous with *circum*. ⁶ *violentior*: *vīs + lēntus, full of*. ⁷ *hīc*: adverb. ⁸ *vincendum*: understand *vōbīs*. ⁹ *ea*: subject of *prōpōnit*. ¹⁰ *quibus*: depends on *ampliōra*. ¹¹ *optāre*: synonym of *volō*. ¹² *oculōs*: English derivative "oculist." ¹³ *fidēllissimōs*: *fidēs + lis, pertaining to*. Compare "fidelity." ¹⁴ *accedit*: notice the order of the words in the sentence. ¹⁵ *dolor*: *doleō + or, act of*. ¹⁶ *sua*: predicate adjective, *its own*. ¹⁷ *inclūdit*: *in + claudō*. ¹⁸ *oppetere*: *meet*. ¹⁹ *contemptū*: depends on *ācrius*.

Think of English words from *maria*, *nāvem*, *urgent*, *occurristis*, *patria*, *circumscribit*, *vincere*.

EXERCISE XXXI

Grammar: A. 414; 418; 504; 537. N. 2. B. 223; 226; 338, 1, *α*; 284, 1. G. 403; 397; 428; 552, end. H. 479, 1; 480; 626; 570.

Inflection: *pellō*; *virtūs*; *superus* (compare); *quī*.

Order of words: demonstrative pronouns and adjectives of quantity tend to precede the nouns which they modify.

Prescribed list:

<i>nēmō</i>	<i>nisi</i>	<i>prius</i>	<i>reddidit</i>
<i>praestitisse</i>	<i>velut</i>	<i>aliēnārum</i>	<i>potentissimus</i>
<i>congressus est</i>	<i>sīc</i>	<i>dēstiterit</i>	<i>incendit</i>

THE CHARACTER OF HANNIBAL AND HIS HATRED
OF ROME

Hannibal,¹ Hamilcaris filius, Carthāginiēnsis. *Sī* *vērum* *est*, *quod* *nēmō* *dubitāt*, *ut* *populus Rōmānus* *omnīs gentīs* *virtūtē* *superārīt*, *nōn* *est* *īnfitiandum* *Hannibalem* *tantō*² *praestitisse* *cēterōs*³ *imperātōrēs* *prūdentīā*, *quantō* *populus Rōmānus* *antecēdat*⁴ *fortitūdīne*⁵ *cūnctās*⁶ *nātiōnēs*. *Nam* *quotiēnscumque* *cum* *eō*⁷ *congressus* *est* *in* *Ītaliā*, *semper* *discessit* *superior*. *Quod*⁸ *nisi* *domī* *civium*⁹ *suōrum* *invidiā* *dēbilitātū* *eset*, *Rōmānōs* *vidētūr* *superārē* *potuisse*. *Hīc autem* *velut hērēditātē* *relictū* *odium* *paternū* *ergā* *Rōmānōs* *sīc cōservāvit* *ut* *prius*¹⁰ *animam* *quam* *id dēposuerit*, *quī* *quidem*,

cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum¹¹ indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns¹² hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte¹³ incendit bellandī ut ūsque ā rubrō marī arma cōnātus sit īferre Ītaliae.

NEPOS

VOCABULARY

gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe</i>	ergā, <i>towards</i>
īnfītior, 1, <i>deny</i>	cōservō, 1, <i>keep</i> (conservation)
quotiēnscumque, <i>as often as</i>	anima, ae, f., <i>life</i>
semper, <i>always</i>	(ops), opis, f., <i>aid</i>
īnvīdia, ae, f., <i>jealousy</i>	indigeō, 2, uī, —, <i>need</i> (indigent)
dēbilitō, 1, <i>weaken</i> (debility)	numquam, <i>never</i>
hērēdītās, ātis, f., <i>inheritance</i>	ūsque, <i>all the way</i>
odium, odī, n., <i>hatred</i> (odious)	ruber, bra, brum, <i>red</i>

NOTES

¹ Hannibal: the verb is understood. ² tantō: degree of difference. ³ cēterōs: synonym of reliquī. ⁴ antecēdat: ante + cēdō. ⁵ fortitūdine: fortis + tūdō. ⁶ cūnctās: synonym of omnis. ⁷ eō: i.e. populō Rōmānō. ⁸ quod: *therefore*. ⁹ cīvium: cīvitās is formed from the stem. ¹⁰ prius: *sooner*. ¹¹ opum: depends on indigēret. ¹² absēns: he was in Italy at the time. ¹³ cupiditāte: cupidus + tās.

Observe the words in this passage nearly identical with English words: prūdentiā, fortitūdine, nātiōnēs, superior, odium, paternum, omittam, absēns, and others.

EXERCISE XXXII

Grammar: A. 415; 419, a; 573; 580, c. B. 224; 227, 1; 300, 1. G. 400; 409; 452, 2; 423. N. 5. H. 473, 2; 489; 649, II.

Inflection: quaerō; annus; tenēns: hīc.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word usually stands first.

Prescribed list:

nātō	fidem	īnstituerat	dēbeat
quaesīvit	postulō	iūrāre	quīn
libenter	simul	iūsiūrandum	cēlāris

HANNIBAL'S SPEECH TO ANTIOCHUS ABOUT HIS OATH
OF HATRED TO THE ROMANS

Pater meus Hamilcar, puerulō¹ mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs² nātō, in Hispāniam³ imperātor proficiscēns Carthāgine, Iovī optimō maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae divīna rēs⁴ dum cōnficiēbātur, quae sītū ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accēpisset atque ab eō petere coepisset nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, "Faciam," inquit,⁵ "sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis." Simul mē ad āram addūxit apud quam sacrificāre īstituerat, eamque cēteris⁶ remōtis tenentem⁷ iūrāre iussit numquām mē in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūsiūrandūm patri datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōservāvī ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat quīn reliquī tempore eādem mente sim futūrus.⁸ Quārē sī quid amīcē dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris sī mē cēlāris⁹; cum quidem bellū parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis sī nōn mē in eō pīncipem posueris. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

utpote, as, <i>inasmuch as</i>	aētās, ātis, f., <i>time of life</i>
hostia, ae, f., <i>victim</i>	cōservō, i, <i>keep</i>
immolō, i, <i>sacrifice</i>	dubius, a, um, <i>doubtful</i>
inquam (defective verb), <i>say</i>	mēns, mentis, f., <i>mind</i> (mental)
āra, ae, f., <i>altar</i>	cōgitō, i, <i>plan</i>
numquam, <i>never</i>	frūstror, i, <i>disappoint</i>
ūsque, <i>all the time</i>	

NOTES

¹ puerulō: *puer + ulus, little.* ² annōs: regularly after *amplius*, though the ablative is the rule after a comparative. ³ Hispāniam: Spain, where the Second Punic War started. ⁴ rēs: refers to *hostiās immolāvit*.
⁵ inquit: regularly inserted after one or more words of a direct quotation.
⁶ cēteris: synonym of *reliqui*. ⁷ tenentem: understand *mē*. ⁸ sim futūrus: this form expresses future time in the subjunctive mood. The subjunctive is used after *quīn*. ⁹ cēlāris: what letters are omitted?

Explain the derivation of *imperātor*, *amīcitiā*.

EXERCISE XXXIII

Grammar: A. 370; 400; 423, 1; 568. B. 187, III; 214, 2; 231; 297, 1. G. 347; 390, 2; 393; 553, 1. H. 429; 464; 486; 566.

Inflection: eō; equitātus; factus: is.

Order of words: prepositional phrases usually precede the word which they limit, and are arranged according to the emphasis put on them.

Prescribed list:

praefuit	sīc	nēmō	effēcit
summam	comparāvit	nisi	inermis
dētulit	frātre	praeter	vix
pūblicē	quācumque	concīdit	saucium

HANNIBAL'S SUCCESS WITH HOSTILE TRIBES BEFORE
HE REACHES ITALY

Hāc igitur¹ aetātē² cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est³; cuius post obitum,⁴ Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, equitātū omni prae-fuit. Hōc quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem dēlātum pūblicē⁵ comprobātum est.⁶ Sic Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs⁷ nātus imperātor⁸ factus, proximō trienniō⁹ omnīs gentīs Hispāniae bellō subēgit, Saguntum, foederātam¹⁰ cīvitātem, vī expugnāvit, trīs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā reliquit, tertium in Ītaliā sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque iter fēcit, cum omnibus incolis¹¹ cōnfluxit¹²; nēminem nisi victum dimīsit. Ad Alpīs postquam vēnit, quae Ītaliā ab Galliā sēiungunt,¹³ quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat, Alpicōs¹⁴ cōnāntī prohibēre trānsitū¹⁵ concidit, loca patefēcit,¹⁶ itinera mūniit, effēcit ut eā¹⁷ elephantus örnātus¹⁸ ire posset quā anteā¹⁹ ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Ītaliāmque per-vēnit. Pugnāverat apud Rhodanum cum Pūbliō Cornēliō Scipiōne cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem apud Padum²⁰ dīmicat sauciumque inde ac fugātum²¹ dīmittit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

<i>aetās, ātis, f., time of life</i>	<i>saltus, ūs, m., mountain pass</i>
<i>sufficiō, 3, fēcī, fectus, put in place of</i>	<i>umquam, ever</i>
<i>gēns, gentis, f., tribe (gentile)</i>	<i>ōrnō, 1, equip</i>
<i>subīgō, 3, ēgī, āctus, subdue</i>	<i>rēpō, 3, rēpsī, —, creep</i>

NOTES

¹ *igitur*: = *itaque*. ² *aetāte*: i. e. *novem annōs nātus*. ³ *profectus est*: subject refers to Hannibal. ⁴ *obitum*: synonym of *mors*. ⁵ *pūblicē*: i. e. by the government, in spite of his youth. ⁶ *comprobātum est*: *con + probō*. ⁷ *annīs*: for the case, consider *minor*. ⁸ *imperātor*: in the predicate with *factus*. ⁹ *trienniō*: *trēs + annus*. ¹⁰ *foederātam*: *allied*.
¹¹ *incolīs*: noun from the verb *incolō*. ¹² *cōnfluxit*: synonym of *pugnō*.
¹³ *sēiungunt*: *sē, dis-*, + *iungō*. ¹⁴ *Alpicōs*: *dwellers in the Alps*. ¹⁵ *trānsitū*: *trāns + eō + tus*. ¹⁶ *patefēcit*: *pateō + faciō*. ¹⁷ *eā*: understand *viā*. ¹⁸ *ōrnātus*: contrasted with *inermis* below. ¹⁹ *anteā*: opposite of *posteā*. ²⁰ *Padum*: the Po river. ²¹ *fugātum*: *routed*.

EXERCISE XXXIV

Grammar: A. 452, 1; 509; 510; 531, a. B. 329; 330; 340, 1, 2; 282, 1, a. G. 422; 435; 436; 545, 2. H. 609, 1; 633; 635; 568, 7.

Inflection: *possum*; *aciēs*; *uterque*; *qui*.

Order of words: an appositive regularly follows the noun which it limits.

Prescribed list:

<i>dextrō</i>	<i>aliquot</i>	<i>cupīvit</i>	<i>simul</i>
<i>aequē</i>	<i>praetereā</i>	<i>valentior</i>	<i>excesserant</i>
<i>premerētur</i>	<i>restitit</i>	<i>congrederētur</i>	<i>contrāxit</i>
<i>hinc</i>	<i>iterum</i>	<i>bīduō</i>	

HANNIBAL DEFEATS THE ROMANS BOTH IN ITALY AND IN AFRICA

Per Ligurēs¹ Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc in itinere adeō gravī morbō afficitur² oculōrum ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine³ cum etiamtum

premerētur lectīcāque ferrētur, Gāium Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasumēnum⁴ cum exercitū īsidiis circumventum occidit,⁵ neque multō post⁶ Gāium Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlēctā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpūliam⁷ pervēnit. Ibi obviam eī vēnērunt⁸ duo cōnsulēs, Gāius Terentius et Lūcius Aemilius. Utrīusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōnsulem occidit et aliquot praetereā cōnsulāris, in iīs Gnaeum Servīlium Geminum, qui superiōre annō fuerat cōnsul. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre⁹ proelia. Quamdiū in Ītaliā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēnsem¹⁰ pugnam in campō castra posuit. Hinc invictus¹¹ patriam dēfēnsum¹² revocātus bellum gessit adversus Pūblium Scīpiōnem, filium eius Scīpiōnis quem ipse prīmō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum,¹³ tertīō apud Trebiam¹⁴ fugārat. Cum hōc, exhaustis iam patriae facultatibus, cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior posteā congrederētur. In colloquium convēnit¹⁵; condicōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum paucis diēbus apud Zamam¹⁶ cum eōdem cōnfluxit¹⁷; pulsus (incrēdible dictū) bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, qui simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, īsidiātī sunt¹⁸ eī; quōs nōn sōlum effūgit¹⁹ sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī reliquōs ē fugā collēgit; novis dilēctibus paucis diēbus multōs contrāxit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

adeō, <i>so</i>	campus, ī, m., <i>field</i>
morbus, ī, m., <i>disease</i> (morbid)	revocō, ī, <i>recall</i>
oculus, ī, m., <i>eye</i> (ocular)	exhauriō, 4. hausī, haustus, <i>use up</i>
numquam, <i>never</i>	patria, ae, f., <i>native land</i>
lectīca, ae, f., <i>litter</i>	impraesentiārum, <i>for the present</i>
saltus, ūs, m., <i>mountain pass</i>	compōnō, 3. posuī, <i>positus, settle</i>
fugō, ī, <i>put to flight</i>	(compose)
cōnsulāris, is, m., <i>ex-consul</i>	colligō, 3. lēgī, lēctus, <i>collect</i>
ēnumerō, ī, <i>relate</i>	dilēctus, ūs, m., <i>levy</i>
quamdiū, <i>as long as</i>	

NOTES

¹ **Ligurēs**: a tribe in the northwestern part of Italy. ² **afficitur**: English derivative? ³ **valētūdine**: *valeō + tūdō*. It means *a state of health*, either good or bad, according to the context. ⁴ **Trasumēnum**: a lake in Etruria. ⁵ **occidit**: did he do this *in spite of* **premerētur** and **ferrētur**, or *because of* those acts? ⁶ **post**: adverb. ⁷ **Apūliam**: in southern Italy. ⁸ **obviam vēnērunt**: *mct.* ⁹ **ēnumerāre**: English derivative? ¹⁰ **Cannēnsem**: *of Cannā*. Here the Romans met their worst defeat at the hands of Hannibal, in 216 B.C. ¹¹ **invictus**: compare English "inconvenient." ¹² **dēfēnsum**: supine with **revocātus**. ¹³ **Padum**: the Po. ¹⁴ **Trebiam**: a river of northern Italy. Here Hannibal defeated the Romans in 218 B.C. ¹⁵ **convēnit**: *an agreement was made*. ¹⁶ **Zamam**: a town in northern Africa, near which Scipio finally defeated Hannibal in 202 B.C. ¹⁷ **cōnfluxit**: synonym of **pugnō**. ¹⁸ **īnsidiātī sunt**: deponent formed from the stem of **īnsidiae**. ¹⁹ **effūgit**: *ex + fugiō*.

EXERCISE XXXV

Grammar: A. 427, 1, 2, 3; 540, 2; 563. B. 229, 1; 182, 1; 228, 1, *a*; 232, 1; 286, 1; 295, 1. G. 391; 337; 411; 386; 541; 546. H. 491, II, 1, 2, 3; 588, II; 565.

Inflection: *fīō*; *mūnus*; *āriter*; *ille*.

Order of words: the dependent clauses are arranged in the sentence in the order of their importance in the mind of the writer.

Prescribed list:

item	simul	susceptum	creābantur
frāter	cōsultō	hūc	parī
grātiās	rogārent	rediit	praebuit
pācem	operā	bīnī	penderētur
corōnā			

THE CARTHAGINIANS MAKE PEACE WITH THE ROMANS,
BUT HANNIBAL FIGHTS ON UNTIL RECALLED

Cum in apparandō¹ ācerimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō² sētius exercitū posteā praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gēssit itemque Māgō frāter eius ūsque ad Pūblium Sulpiciū Gāium Aurēliū³ cōsulēs. Hīs enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, quī senātū

populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent⁴ quod cum iīs pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent, simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellis⁵ essent captivīque redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōnsultō respōnsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum accep-tumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captivōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimīcissimum⁶ nōminī Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent⁷ itemque frātrem eius Māgōnem. Hōc respōnsō cognitō Carthāginiēnsēs Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocā-runt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat annō secundō et vīcēsimō; ut⁸ enim Rōmae cōnsulēs, sīc⁸ Carthāgine quotannīs annuī⁹ binī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī diligētiā sē Hannibal prae-buit ac¹⁰ fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novis vectigālibus nōn sōlum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānis ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam superes-set quae in aerāriō repō-nerētur.¹¹ — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

compōnō, 3, posuī, positus, settle	revocō, 1, recall
sētius, the less	vīcēsimus, a, um, twentieth
ūsque, all the time	quotannīs, yearly
aureus, a, um, golden	vectigal, is, n., revenue
dōnō, 1, present (donor)	pecūnia, ae, f., money (pecuniary)
grātus, a, um, pleasing	foedus, eris, n., treaty
nunc, now	aerārium, aerāri, n., treasury

NOTES

¹ apparandō: ad + parō. ² nihilō: = nihil. For the case, consider sētius.
³ Sulpiciū, Aurēliū: the Romans designated a year by the names of the consuls. ⁴ agerent: states the purpose of vēnērunt. ⁵ Fregellīs: *Fregellae*, a city not far from Rome. ⁶ inimīcissimum: in + amīcus.
⁷ habērent: the subject refers to the Carthaginians. ⁸ ut, sīc: introducing ideas which are compared. ⁹ annuī: adjective from annus. Compare the English "annual." ¹⁰ ac: as. ¹¹ repōnerētur: re + pōnō.

What is the force of the prefix in *apparandō*, *prae-fuit*, *redderentur*, *remissūrōs*, *susceptum*, *revocārunt*?

EXERCISE XXXVI

Grammar: A. 426, 1, 2, 3; 427, 1, 2, 3; 530; 531, 2. B. 229, 1; 182, 1, 2; 228, 1, a; 232, 1; 282, 1, a. G. 390, 1; 337, 1; 385; 386; 411; 545, 2. H. 491, I, 1, 2, 3, II, 1, 2, 3; 568, 1.

Inflection: *persuādeō*; *nāvis*; *bonus* (compare): *īdem*.

Order of words: prepositions regularly precede the words which they govern.

Prescribed list:

deinde	profūgit	indūcerentur	ventīs
priusquam	at	hūc	duplex
ascendit	postquam	vēla	namque
clam			

HANNIBAL FLEES FROM CARTHAGE AND TRIES TO
BRING ON ANOTHER WAR

Deinde Mārcō Claudiō Lūciō Fūriō cōsulibus,¹ Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vēnērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī exposcēndi² grātiā missōs,³ priusquam iūs senātus darētūr, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam⁴ factā, Poenī nāvis duās, quae eum comprehendērēnt, sī possent cōsequī, mīsērunt; bona⁵ eius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiēcērunt,⁶ ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt. At Hannibal annō tertīō postquam domō profūgerat, Lūciō Cornēliō Quintō Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in fīnibus Cyrēnaeōrum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad bellum Antiochī spē fidūciāque⁷ indūcerentur, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Ītaliā proficiērēt. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excīvit. Id ubi Poenī rescīvērunt,⁸ Māgōnem eādem quā frātrem absentem affēcērunt poenā. Illī dēspērātīs⁹ rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventīs dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pērvēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū¹⁰ duplex memoria¹¹ prōdīta est; namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulīs ipsius interfectū¹² eum scriptū reliquērunt. Antiochus autem paucīs nāvibus adversus Rhodiōrum¹³ classem pugnāvit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

reor, 2, ratus, <i>think</i>	excīō, 4. īvī, ītus, <i>call forth</i>
comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, <i>seize</i>	poena, ae, f., <i>punishment</i>
pūblicō, 1, <i>confiscate</i>	solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus, <i>loose</i>
fundāmentum, ī, n., <i>foundation</i>	prōdō, 3. dīdī, ditus, <i>hand down</i>
exsul, ulis, m., f., <i>exile</i>	naufragium, naufragī, n., <i>shipwreck</i>
forte, <i>by chance</i>	servulus, ī, m., <i>slave</i>
	scribō, 3, scripsī, scriptus, <i>write</i>

NOTES

¹ cōnsulibus: ablative absolute. ² exposcendī: ex + poscō; synonym of petō. ³ missōs: understand esse. ⁴ palam: the opposite of clam. ⁵ bona: used as a noun. ⁶ disiēcērunt: observe the composition. ⁷ fidūciā: synonym of fidēs. ⁸ rescīvērunt: synonym of cognōscō. ⁹ dēspērātis: dē + spērō. English derivative? ¹⁰ interitū: synonym of mors. ¹¹ memoria: *account*. ¹² interfectum: understand esse, and make eum the subject. ¹³ Rhodiōrum: the people of Rhodes.

Determine from their position whether these words are emphatic: hōs, clam, Carthāginiēnsēs, poenā, pērvenīt.

EXERCISE XXXVII

Grammar: A. 409, a: 549: 564: 574. B. 218, 8: 286, 2: 296, 2; 300, 1. G. 405; 586; 550, 2; 467. H. 477, II; 598: 567, 1; 649, II.

Inflection: capiō; cōnsilium; simulāns; quisquam.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity normally precede their nouns.

Prescribed list:

dēdērētūr	nisi	sciēbat	tolleret
potestātem	prōvīdisset	exīsse	quisquam
cōferret	enīm	complet	conciliābat
callidissimus	portābat	dēpōnit	

HANNIBAL CONCEALS HIS TREASURE

Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēdērētūr, quod¹ sine dubiō accidisset, sī suī fēcisset potestātem,² Crētam ad Gortyniōs³ vēnit, ut ibi, quō sē cōferret, cōnsiderāret. Vīdit autem vir⁴ omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvīdisset, propter avāritiam

Crētēnsium⁵: magnam enim sēcum pecūniā portābat, dē quā sciēbat exīsse fāmā. Itaque capit⁶ tāle cōnsilium.⁷ Amphorās complūris complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās praesentibus p̄rincipib⁹ dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum⁸ fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis,⁹ statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omnī suā pecūniā complet eāsque in p̄ōpatulō domī abicit.¹⁰ Gortyni templum magnā cūrā¹¹ custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēteris¹² quam ab Hannibale, nē ille īscientib⁹ iīs tolleret sua sēcumque dūceret. Sīc cōservātis suīs rēbus Poenus, illūsis Crētēnsibus omnibus, ad Prūsiām¹⁴ in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Italiam, neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem¹⁵ cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

fugō, i., <i>put to flight</i>	simulō, i., <i>pretend</i>
dubius, a, um, <i>doubtful</i>	crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>trust (credence)</i>
avāritia, ae, f., <i>greed (avaricious)</i>	aēneus, a, um, <i>bronze</i>
pecūnia, ae, f., <i>money</i>	p̄ōpatulum, ī, n., <i>open court</i>
fāma, ae, f., <i>report (famous)</i>	custōdiō, 4, īvī, ītus, <i>guard (custody)</i>
tālis, e, <i>such</i>	cōservō, i., <i>save</i>
amphora, ae, f., <i>jar</i>	illūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsus, <i>make sport of</i>
plumbum, ī, n., <i>lead</i>	ergā, <i>towards</i>
operiō, 4, uī, tūs, <i>cover</i>	exerceō, 2, uī, itus, <i>arouse</i>
aurum, ī, n., <i>gold</i>	(ops), opis, f., <i>means</i>
argentum, ī, n., <i>silver</i>	bellicōsus, a, um, <i>warlike</i>

NOTES

¹ quod: refers to nē dēderētur. ² suī potestātem: *a chance at him.*
³ Gortyniōs: people of the city of Gortyna in Crete. ⁴ vir: not the subject of vīdit. What then is its syntax? ⁵ Crētēnsium: compare Carthāginiēnsium. ⁶ capit: *adopts.* ⁷ cōnsilium: what follows explains this.
⁸ illōrum: refers to p̄rincipibus. ⁹ inductis: observe the composition.
¹⁰ abicit: observe the composition; ab = de. ¹¹ cūrā: related to the verb

cūrō. ¹² cēterīs: synonym of reliquī. ¹³ īscientibus: observe the composition. Compare the English "secure" and "insecure." ¹⁴ Prūsiām: Prusias, the king. ¹⁵ quem: not the object of vidēret.

Determine the force of the prefix in *prōvidisset*, *dēpōnit*, *inductīs*, *abicit*, *adiungēbat*.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

Grammar: A. 349; 563; 564; 569, 2. B. 204, 1; 295, 1; 296, 2; 297, 2. G. 374; 546, 2; 550, 1, 2; 553, 3. H. 450; 451, 1; 565; 567, 1; 571, 1.

Inflection: fīō; domus; facile (compare); suī.

Order of words: the modifying phrase usually precedes the word which it modifies.

Prescribed list:

dum	ausus est	castellō	sēnsit
cāsū	recūsāvit	mūnerī	aliēnō
rēgnō	iūs	aedificārat	prīstinus
dētulit	hospitī	circumdedissent	sūmpsit
īnsidiīs			

HOW THE ROMANS BROUGHT ABOUT HANNIBAL'S DEATH

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae¹ Rōmae apud² Titum Quīntium Flāminīnum cōsulārem cēnārent, atque, ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex iīs ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōscriptī,³ quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs existimārent,⁴ lēgātōs in Bithyniam mīserunt, in iīs Flāminīnum, quī ab rēge peterent nē inimīcissimum⁵ suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsiās negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent quod adversus iūs hospitī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehendērent⁶; locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs.⁷ Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat in castellō, quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūnerī,⁸ idque sīc aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedifici exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū venīret⁹ quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine

domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā prōspiciēns Hannibali dixit plūris praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. Qui imperāvit eī ut omnīs forīs¹⁰ aedificī circumīret ac properē¹¹ sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūtiāset omnīsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō¹² factum,¹³ sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dimitteret, memor prīstīnārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōsuērat, sūmpsīt. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

cōsulāris, is, m., <i>ex-consul</i>	appārēō, 2, uī, —, <i>appear</i>
cēnō, i, <i>dine</i>	num, <i>whether</i>
vīvus, a, um, <i>alive</i>	obsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, <i>beset</i>
numquam, <i>never</i>	vīta, ae, f., <i>life</i>
negō, i, <i>say "no"</i> (negative)	arbitrium, arbi'trī, n., <i>will</i>
comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, <i>seize</i>	memor, memoris, <i>mindful</i>
scilicet, <i>evidently</i>	venēnum, i, n., <i>poison</i>
iānua, ae, f., <i>door</i>	semper, <i>always</i>
prōspiciō, 3, spexī, <i>spectus, watch</i>	

NOTES

¹ Prūsiae: genitive; Prusias, king of the state in which Hannibal was then living. ² apud: *at the house of*. ³ patrēs cōscriptī: a term applied to the senators; cōscriptī, *enrolled*. ⁴ qui . . . existimārent: gives a reason for mīsērunt. ⁵ inimicissimum: *in + amīcus, greatest enemy*. ⁶ ipsī . . . comprehendērent: indirect discourse, depending on recūsāvit; comprehendērent represents an imperative in the words of Prusias. ⁷ inventūrōs: *in + veniō; in, upon*. ⁸ mūnerī: dative showing purpose. ⁹ ūsū venīret: = accideret. ¹⁰ forīs: synonym of iānua. ¹¹ properē: synonym of celeriter. ¹² fortuitō: synonym of cāsū. ¹³ factum: understand *esse*.

Think of English words from *accidit*, *mīsērunt*, *peterent*, *negāre*, *inventūrōs*, *prōspiciēns*.

EXERCISE XXXIX

Grammar: A. 367; 372; 415; 546. B. 187, II, *a, b*; 224; 288, 1, B. G. 346, R. 1; 400; 585. H. 426, 1, 3; 473, 2; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: gerō; adventus; superior; ipse.

Order of words: in the ablative absolute the emphatic word, usually the noun, stands first.

Prescribed list:

marī	occāsiōne	īnsulās	refectae
terrā	laceſſīvit	statuērunt	renovāre
cessit	paene	etsī	nisi
nocendī	āmīſſissent	statim	trādere
saepe	classe		

HAMILCAR, THE CARTHAGINIAN, AGREES TO PEACE
WITH THE ROMANS, BUT HOPES FOR A CHANCE TO
FIGHT AGAIN

Hamilcar, Hannibalis¹ filius, cognōmine Barca, Carthāginiēnsis, pīmō Pūnicō bellō, sed temporibus² extrēmīs, admodum adulēſcentulus in Siciliā praeſeſſe coepit exercituī. Cum³ ante eius adventum et marī et terrā male rēs gererentur Carthāginiēſium, ipſe ubi adſuit numquām hostī cessit neque locum⁴ nocendī dedit, ſaepeque ē contrāriō occāſiōne datā laceſſīvit⁵ ſemperque ſuperior diſcēſſit. Quō factō, cum paene omnia in Siciliā Poenī āmīſſiſſent, ille Erycem⁶ ſīc dēfendit ut bellum eō locō gestum nōn vidērētur. Interim Carthāginiēſes classe⁷ apud īſulās Aegātēs ā Gāiō Lutātiō, cōſule Rōmānōrum, ſuperātī ſtatuerunt bellī facere finem, eamque rem arbitriō permīſerunt Hamilcaris. Ille etsī flagrābat bellandī cupiditātē,⁸ tamen pācī ſerviendum⁹ putāvit, quod patriam exhaustam ſūmptibus¹⁰ diūtius calamitātēs bellī ferre nōn posſe intellegēbat; ſed ita ut ſtatim mente agitāret.¹¹ ſī paulum modo rēs eſſent refectae, bellum renovāre Rōmānōſque armīs perſequī¹² dōnicum aut virtūtē vīciſſent aut victī manūs dediſſent. Hōc cōſiliō pācem conciliāvit. In quō¹³ tantā fuit ferōciā,¹⁴ cum Catulus

negāret bellum compositūrum¹⁵ nisi ille¹⁶ cum suīs, quī Erycem tenērent, armis relictis Siciliā dēcēderent, ut succumbente patriā ipse peritūrum sē potius dixerit¹⁷ quam cum tantō flāgitiō domum rediret; nōn enim suae esse virtūtis¹⁸ arma ā patriā accepta adversus hostis adversāriis trādere. Huius¹⁹ pertināciae cessit Catulus. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

cognōmen, inis, n., <i>surname</i>	dōnicum, <i>until</i>
admodum, <i>mere</i>	conciliō, 1, <i>bring about</i>
male, <i>badly</i>	ferōcia, ae, f., <i>fierceness</i>
adsum, esse, fuī, —, <i>be present</i>	negō, 1, <i>say not</i>
numquam, <i>never</i>	compōnō, 3, posuī, <i>positus, bring to an end</i>
semper, <i>always</i>	succumbō, 3, cubuī, —, <i>fall</i>
arbitrium, arbi'trī, n., <i>management</i>	patria, ae, f., <i>country</i>
flagrō, 1, <i>be on fire</i>	pereō, 4, iī, itūrus, <i>perish</i>
serviō, 4, ivī, ītum, <i>serve, aim at</i>	potius, <i>rather</i>
exhauriō, 4, hausī, <i>haustus, wear out</i>	flāgitium, flāgi'tī, n., <i>wrongdoing</i>
sūmptus, ūs, m., <i>expense</i>	pertinācia, ae, f., <i>obstinacy</i>
mēns, mentis, f., <i>mind</i>	

NOTES

¹ Hannibal: not the Hannibal mentioned elsewhere, who was Hamilcar's son. ² temporibus: i.e. huius bellī. ³ cum: concessive. ⁴ locum: = occāsiō. ⁵ lacessivit: understand hostis. ⁶ Erycem: *Eryx*, a town in Sicily. ⁷ classe: states the means of superātī. ⁸ cupiditātē: cupidus + tās. ⁹ serviendum: understand sibi. ¹⁰ sūmptibus: states the cause of exhaustam. ¹¹ mente agitāret: nearly equal to putāret, but has also the idea of intend. ¹² persequī: composition? ¹³ quō: refers to pācem conciliāvit. ¹⁴ ferōciā: describes the subject of fuit. ¹⁵ compositūrum: understand sē. ¹⁶ ille: i.e. Hamilcar. ¹⁷ ut . . . dixerit: keep in mind tantā above. ¹⁸ virtūtis: shows possession, the thing possessed being arma . . . trādere. ¹⁹ huius: i.e. Hamilcar.

EXERCISE XL

Grammar: A. 305; 404; 540, 1; 549. B. 250; 219; 286, 1, 2. G. 614; 408; 540; 586. H. 396; 475; 588, I; 598.

Inflection: oppugnō; imperātor; plūs; hīc.

Order of words: a noun depending on another noun usually stands next to it, either before or after it, according to the emphasis.

Prescribed list:

aliter	perterriti	amplius	reddidit
namque	imperatrūnt	compulit	reperīret
parī	prope	valentissima	praetereā
nisi	mūrīs	restituit	mōrēs
vīgintī			

HAMILCAR FINDS CARTHAGE BESET BY ENEMIES,
BUT DEFEATS THEM AND THEN SETS OUT FOR
SPAIN

At ille ut Carthāginem vēnit, multō aliter ac¹ spērārat² rem pūblicam sē habentem³ cognōvit. Namque diūturnitātē⁴ externī malī tantum intestīnum bellum ut numquam in parī periculō fuerit Carthāgō, nisi cum dēlēta est. Prīmō mercēnnāriī militēs quibus adversus Rōmānōs ūsī erant dēscivērunt, quōrum numerus erat vīgintī milium. Iī tōtam abaliēnārunt Āfricam, ipsam Carthāginem oppugnārunt. Quibus malīs adeō⁵ sunt Poenī perterriti ut etiam auxilia ab Rōmānīs petierint; eaque⁶ imperatrūnt. Sed extrēmō, cum prope iam ad dēspērātiōnem⁷ pervēnissent, Hamilcarem imperātōrem fēcērunt. Is nōn sōlum hostīs ā mūrīs Carthāginis remōvit, cum amplius centum mīlia facta essent armātōrum, sed etiam eō⁸ compulit ut locōrum angustiī clausī plūrēs famē quam ferrō⁹ interīrent.¹⁰ Omnia oppida abaliēnāta, in iīs Uticam atque Hippōnem, valentissima tōtius Āfricae, restituit patriae. Neque eō fuit contentus, sed etiam fīnīs imperī prōpāgāvit,¹¹ tōtā Āfricā¹² tantum ūtium¹³ reddidit ut nūllum in eā bellum vidērētur multis annīs fuisse. Rēbus his ex sententiā perāctis fidentī animō atque īfēstō Rōmānīs, quō¹⁴ facilius causam bellandī

reperiret, effecit ut imperator cum exercitu in Hispaniam mitteretur, eoque secum duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem. Erat praeterea cum eō adulescens illustris, formosus, Hasdrubal. Huic ille filiam suam in matrimonium dedit. Dē hōc ideō mentionem fecimus, quod Hamilcar occiso ille exercitu praefuit resque magnas gessit, et princeps largitione vetustos¹³ pervertit mores Carthaginiensium, eiusdemque post mortem Hannibal ab exercitu accepit imperium. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

diūturnitās, ātis, f., <i>length</i>	famēs, is, f., <i>hunger</i>
malum, ī, n., <i>misfortune</i>	patria, ae, f., <i>country</i>
exārdēscō, 3, ārsī, —, <i>blaze forth</i>	fidēns, fidentis, <i>confident</i>
intestīnus, a, um, <i>civil</i>	īnfēstus, a, um, <i>hostile</i>
numquam, <i>never</i>	adulēscēns, centis, m., <i>youth</i>
dēleō, 2, ēvī, ētus, <i>destroy</i>	illūstris, e, <i>distinguished</i>
mercēnnārius, a, um, <i>hired</i>	fōrmōsus, a, um, <i>handsome</i>
dēscīscō, 3, scīvī, —, <i>desert</i>	mātrīmōnium, mātrīmōnī, n., <i>marriage</i>
abaliēnō, 1, <i>make hostile</i>	ideō, <i>for this reason</i>
claudō, 3, clausī, <i>clausus, hem in</i>	largītō, ūnis, f., <i>lavish giving</i>
	pervertō, 3, vertī, <i>versus, corrupt</i>

NOTES

¹ ac: *than.* ² spērārat: note the shortened form. There are others in the passage. ³ sē habentem: *in a condition.* ⁴ diūturnitāte: states the cause of exārsit. ⁵ adeō: synonym of ita. ⁶ ea: refers to auxilia. ⁷ dēspērātiōnem: dē + spērō + tiō. ⁸ eō: *to such a point.* ⁹ ferrō: used for gladius. ¹⁰ interīrent: nearly equivalent here to interficerentur. ¹¹ prōpāgāvit: synonym of augeō. ¹² Africā: in is omitted with tōtā. ¹³ ūtium: nearly equivalent to pāx. ¹⁴ quō: introduces a purpose clause when the clause contains a comparative. ¹⁵ vetustōs: synonym of vetus.



GALLIC SWORD-BLADE

EXERCISE XLI

Grammar: A. 376; 578; 579; 580. B. 188, 1; 313; 314, 1; 331, 1. G. 350, 2; 648; 650. H. 425, 4; 641; 642; 643.

Inflection: cōgō; classis; vetus; suus.

Order of words: the normal order of the sentence is (1) subject, (2) modifiers of subject, (3) modifiers of verb, (4) verb.

Prescribed list:

ulteriōrem	complēverat	mandātis	castellis
quō	adulēscētis	portās	īnstituerant
septem	officia	fidē	reficiēbant

CÆSAR FINDS THAT THE CITY OF MASSILIA IS MAKING
READY TO OPPOSE HIM

Cæsar and Pompey once had been friends. Indeed, Pompey had married Cæsar's daughter Julia, and had been closely associated with him in some of his greatest undertakings. But the changing circumstances of the times and Julia's death had weakened the ties that once bound them, and they were now enemies. Cæsar has just been in Rome, and through the senate has tried to bring about a reconciliation with Pompey, but in vain.

Caesar ab urbe proficiscitur atque in ulteriōrem Galliam pervenit. Quō cum vēnisset, cognōscit missum¹ in Hispāniā² ā Pompēiō Vibullium Rūfum, quem paucis ante diēbus Corfiniō³ captum⁴ ipse dimiserat; profectum item Domitium⁵ ad occupandam Massiliam⁶ nāvibus āctuāriis septem, quās Igili⁷ et in Cosānō⁸ ā privātis coāctās servis, libertis, colōnis suīs complēverat; praemissōs etiam lēgātōs Massiliēnsīs⁹ domum, nōbilis adulēscētis, quōs ab urbe discēdēns Pompēius erat adhortātus¹⁰ nē nova Caesaris officia veterum suōrum¹¹ beneficiōrum in eōs memoriam expellerent. Quibus mandātis acceptīs Massiliēnsēs portās Caesari¹² clauerant; Albicōs, barbarōs hominēs, quī in eōrum fidē antiquitus erant montisque suprā Massiliam incolēbant, ad sē vocāverant; frūmentum ex finitimīs regiōnibus atque ex omnibus castellis in urbem convexerant; armōrum officinās in urbe īstituerant; mūrōs, portās, classem reficiēbant. — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 33, 34

VOCABULARY

āctuārius, a, um, <i>swif</i> ̄t	antiquitus, <i>in olden times</i>
servus, ī, m., <i>slave</i>	vocō, ī, <i>summon</i>
lībertus, ī, m., <i>freedman</i>	convehō, 3. <i>vexī, vectus, collect</i>
colōnus, ī, m., <i>colonist</i>	officīna, ae, f., <i>manufactory</i>
claudō, 3, <i>clausī, clausus, shut</i>	

NOTES

¹ missum: understand esse. Why? ² Hispāniam: *Spain*. ³ Corfiniō: a town in central Italy. ⁴ captum: translate by a temporal clause. ⁵ Domitium: an adherent of Pompey, afterwards in command of the defense of Massilia. ⁶ Massiliām: *Marseilles*. ⁷ Igili: a small island off the coast of Italy, not far from Rome. ⁸ Cosānō: the territory belonging to Cosa, a town near the coast, northwest of Rome. ⁹ Massiliēnsis: Massilia + ēnsis, -ian. ¹⁰ adhortātus: = hortātus. ¹¹ suōrum: refers to Pompey. ¹² Caesārī: dative of reference.

Observe the force of the prefix in *dīmiserat*, *praemissōs*, *expellerent*, *reficiēbant*.

EXERCISE XLII

Grammar: A. 343, c; 452, 1; 484, a, b. B. 198, 3; 330; 267, 2, 3. G. 366, 2; 422; 509; 510. H. 439, 5; 615; 543; 544; 545.

Inflection: augeō; vīs; pār; is.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word usually stands first.

Prescribed list:

agit	dēbēre	pār	iuvāre
initium	voluntātī	quoque	portibus
oriātūr	utra	neutrūm	

CÆSAR TRIES TO GAIN THE SUPPORT OF THE
MASSILIANS, BUT THEY DECIDE TO REMAIN
NEUTRAL

Ēvocat ad sē Caesar Massiliā quīndecim pīmōs.¹ Cum hīs agit nē initium īferendī belli ab Massiliēnsibus oriātūr²: dēbēre eōs Ītaliae tōtius auctōritātem sequī potius quam ūnīus hominis voluntātī obtemperāre. Reliqua quae ad eōrum sānandās mentīs³ pertinēre

arbitrābātur⁴ commemorat. Cuius ḍrātiōnem lēgātī domum refe-
runt atque ex auctōritātē haec Caesarī renūntiant: intellegere sē
dīvīsum esse⁵ populum Rōmānum in duās partīs. Neque suī
iūdici⁶ neque suārum esse vīrium discernere utra pars iūstiōrem
habeat causam. Prīncipēs vērō esse eārum partium Gnaeum
Pompēium et Gāium Caesarem, patrōnōs cīvitātis; quōrum alter⁷
agrōs Volcārum⁸ Arecomicōrum et Helviōrum pūblicē iīs conces-
serit, alter bellō victōs Sallyas⁹ attribuerit vectigāliaque auxerit.
Quārē paribus eōrum beneficiis¹⁰ parem sē quoque voluntātem
tribuere dēbēre et neutrum eōrum contrā alterum iuvāre aut urbe
aut portibus recipere. — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 35

VOCABULARY

ēvocō, 1, *summon*

potius, *rather*

obtemperō, 1, *heed*

sānō, 1, *heal*

commemorō, 1, *mention*

iūdiciūm, iūdī'cī, n., *judgment*

discernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, *decide*

attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*

vectigāl, ālis, n., *revenue*

NOTES

¹ prīmōs: understand cīvīs.

² oriātūr: states the purpose of agit.

³ eōrum sānandās mentis: *bringing them to their senses*; mentis is a synonym of animus.

⁴ arbitrābātur: synonym of putō. ⁵ dīvīsum esse: depends on intellegere.

⁶ iūdici: shows possession. ⁷ alter: Pompey. ⁸ Volcārum,

etc.: tribes of Gaul. ⁹ Sallyas: a tribe dwelling not far from Massilia.

Accusative plural. ¹⁰ paribus eōrum beneficiis: gives a reason for parem

sē voluntātem tribuere dēbēre.

Observe the emphasis in the following phrases: īferendī bellī, ītaliae
tōtius, ūniūs hominis, iūstiōrem causam.

EXERCISE XLIII

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3: 420, 1; 423, 1; 503. B. 201, 2; 227, 2, a;
231; 339, 1, 2. G. 369: 410; 393: 427. H. 441; 489, 1: 487; 623;
626; 628.

Inflection: ūtor: portus; reliquus; quī.

Order of words: a prepositional phrase usually limits a word following it.
Prescribed list:

summa	ubique	materiā	obsidiōnem
administrandī	portum	armandās	turrīs
permittitur	dēdūcunt	reficiendās	vīneās
onerāriās	parum	commeātūs	caesa est

DOMITIUS REACHES MASSILIA AND MAKES PREPARATIONS FOR ITS DEFENSE

Haec dum inter eōs aguntur, Domitius¹ nāvibus Massiliam pervenit atque ab iis² receptus urbī praeſicitur; summa eī bellī administrandī permittitur. Eius imperiō classem quōqueversus dīmittunt; onerāriās nāvīs, quās ubique possunt,³ dēprehendunt atque in portum dēdūcunt, parum clāvīs⁴ aut materiā atque armāmentīs instrūctīs ad reliquās armandās⁵ reficiendāsque ūtuntur; frūmentū quod⁶ inventum est, in pūblicum cōferunt; reliquās mercēs commeātūsque ad obsidiōnem urbīs, sī accidat, reservant. Quibus iniūriīs⁷ permōtus Caesar legiōnēs trīs Massiliam addūcit; turrīs vīneāsque ad oppugnātiōnem urbīs agere, nāvīs longās Arelātē⁸ numerō duodecim facere ūstituit. Quibus effectīs armātīsque diēbus trīgintā, ā quā diē māteria caesa est, adductīsque Massiliam, hīs Decimum Brūtum praeſicit, Gāium Trebōnium lēgātūm ad oppugnātiōnem Massiliae relinquit. — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 36

VOCABULARY

quōqueversus, <i>in every direction</i>	armāmentum, ī, n., <i>equipment</i>
dēprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, <i>catch</i>	inveniō, 4, vēnī, <i>ventus, come upon, find</i>
suſtēnō, <i>suddenly</i>	merx, <i>mercis, f., merchandise</i>

NOTES

¹ Domitius: an adherent of Pompey. ² iis: refers to the Massilians.
³ possunt: understand an infinitive from dēprehendunt. ⁴ clāvīs: answers the question "with what" about instrūctīs, which depends on ūtuntur.

⁵ armandās, etc.: states the purpose of **ūtuntur**. ⁶ quod: a relative limited by **frūmentī**. ⁷ iniūriis: refers to what precedes. ⁸ Arelāte: *Arelas*, a town not far from Massilia. What fact does it state about **facere**?

Complete from the above passage the expressions of which each of the following phrases forms a part: **ab iīs**, **in portum**, **in pūblicum**, **ad obsidiōnem**, **ā quā diē**, **ad oppugnātiōnem**.

EXERCISE XLIV

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3; 406; 409; 418. B. 201, 2; 217, 1; 218; 226. G. 369; 398; 401; 397. H. 441; 471; 476; 480.

Inflection: **terreō**; **mūnus**; **minor**; **ipse**.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually in the preceding clause, and is often the word immediately before the relative.

Prescribed list:

hūc	impōnunt	īnsulam	centuriōnēs
classis	praemiīs	statiōnēs	mūneris
suprā	prōcēdunt	īnferior	ferreās

DOMITIUS AND BRUTUS, CÆSAR'S LIEUTENANT, PREPARE FOR A NAVAL BATTLE

Massiliēnsēs ūsī¹ Lūci Domiti cōnsiliō nāvīs longās expedιunt numerō septendecim, quārum erant ūndecim tēctae.² Multa hūc minōra nāvīgia addunt, ut ipsā multitūdine nostra classis terreātūr. Magnum numerum sagittāriōrum, magnum Albicōrum,³ dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātūm est, impōnunt atque hōs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque incitant. Certās sibi dēposcit⁴ nāvīs Domitius atque hās colōnis⁵ pāstōribusque, quōs sēcum addūxerat, complet. Sīc omnibus rēbus⁶ īstrūctā classe, magnā fidūciā⁷ ad nostrās nāvīs prōcēdunt, quibus praeerat Decimus Brūtus. Hae ad īnsulam, quae est contrā Massiliā, statiōnēs obtinēbant. Erat multō īnferior numerō nāvium Brūtus; sed ēlēctōs ex omnibus legiōnibus fortissimōs virōs, antesig-nānōs, centuriōnēs, Caesar eī classī attribuerat,⁸ qui sibi id mūneris⁹ dēpoposcerant. Hī manūs ferreās atque harpagōnēs parāverant.

VOCABULARY

tegō, 3, tēxi, tēctus, <i>cover</i>	pāstor, ōris, m., <i>shepherd</i>
nāvigium, nāvi'gī, n., <i>boat</i>	ēligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, <i>select</i>
terreō, 2. uī, itus, <i>frighten</i>	antesignānus, ī, m., <i>veteran</i>
pollicitātiō, ūnis, f., <i>promise</i>	harpagō, ūnis, m., <i>grappling hook</i>
colōnus, ī, m., <i>colonist</i>	

NOTES

¹ ūsī: what case depends on this word? ² tēctae: *decked*. ³ Albī-cōrum: a tribe dwelling not far from Massilia. ⁴ dēposit: synonym of poscit. ⁵ colōnīs: answers the question "with what" about complet. ⁶ rēbus: limits īstrūctā. ⁷ fidūciā: synonym of fidēs. It answers the question "how" about prōcēdunt. ⁸ attribuerat: nearly synonymous with praeſiciō. ⁹ mūneris: limits id.

Think of English words from numerō, minōra, pāstōribus, complet, ēlēctōs, and observe how the English word retains the meaning of the Latin.

EXERCISE XLV

Grammar: A. 208, d: 418: 504. B. 256, 3; 226; 338, 1, a. G. 208, 2; 397; 428. H. 302, 6; 480; 626.

Inflection: impediō: diēs; uterque: noster.

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the word which it limits.

Prescribed list:

portū	celeritāte	prōductā	aequō
utrimque	gubernātōrum	propius	bīnīs
cēdēbant	excipiēbant	perītīs	obiciēbant
modo	quoad	onerāriīs	compellunt
operam	licēbat		

THE NAVAL BATTLE BETWEEN THE MASSILIANS AND
THE ROMANS

Ita cognitō hostium adventū suās nāvīs ex portū Rōmānī ēdūcunt, cum Massiliēnsibus cōnfigunt.¹ Pugnātum est utrimque fortissimē atque ācerimē; neque multum Albī² nostrīs virtūtē³

cēdēbant, hominēs asperī et montānī⁴ et exercitātī in armīs⁵; atque hī modo digressī ā Massiliēnsibus recentem eōrum pollicitātīōnem animīs continēbant,⁶ pāstōrēsque Domitī spē libertātis excitātī sub oculīs dominī suam probāre operam studēbant. Ipsī Massiliēnsēs et celeritāte nāvium et scientiā⁷ gubernātōrum cōnfisi nostrōs ēlūdēbant impetūsque eōrum nōn excipiēbant et, quoad licēbat lātiōre ūtī spatiō, prōductā longius aciē circumvenire nostrōs aut plūribus nāvibus adorī singulās,⁸ sī possent, contendēbant; cum propius⁹ erat necessārīo ventum, ab scientiā gubernātōrum atque artificiis ad virtūtem montānōrum cōfugiēbant. Nostrī cum¹⁰ minus exercitātis rēmigibus minusque perītis gubernātōribus ūtēbantur, quī repente ex onerāriis nāvibus erant prōducti, tum etiam tarditātē¹¹ et gravitātē¹² nāvium impediēbantur. Itaque, dum locus comminus pugnandī darēt, aequō animō singulās bīnīs nāvibus obiciēbant, atque in hostium nāvīs trānscedēbant,¹³ et, magnō numerō Albicōrum et pāstōrum interfectō, partem nāvium dēprimunt, nōnnūllās cum hominibus capiunt, reliquās in portum compellunt. Eō diē nāvēs Massiliēnsium, cum iīs quae sunt captiae, intereunt novem.¹⁴ — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 57, 58

VOCABULARY

asper, era, erum, *rough*
 exercitō, 1, *train*
 dīgredior, 3, *gressus, depart*
 pollicitātīō, ūnis, f., *promise*
 pāstor, ūris, m., *shepherd*
 oculus, 1, m., *eye*
 dominus, 1, m., *master*
 ēlūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsus, *escape*

artificiū, artifi'cī, n., *device, trick*
 cōfugiō, 3, fūgī, —, *flee for refuge*
 rēmex, igis, m., *rower*
 repente, *suddenly*
 comminus, *at close quarters*
 dēprimō, 3, pressī, pressus, *sink*
 interēō, 4, iī, itum, *perish*

NOTES

¹ cōfigūnt: synonym of pugnō. ² Albicī: a tribe dwelling near Massilia. ³ virtūte: answers the question "in what respect" about cēdēbant. ⁴ montānī: mōns + ūnus, *belonging to*. ⁵ hominēs . . . armīs: this tells why the statement neque . . . cēdēbant is so. ⁶ continēbant: *kept*.

⁷ scientiā: sciēns (sciō) + ia. ⁸ singulās: what word is understood?
⁹ propius: it was better for the Massilians to fight without the risk of being boarded. ¹⁰ cum: not only. ¹¹ tarditātē: tardus + tās. ¹² gravitātē: think of the derivation. ¹³ trāscendēbant: compare the verb ascendō and note the prefix trāns. ¹⁴ novem: with nāvēs.

Think of English words from cōfligunt, cēdēbant, excitātē, scientiā, cōfisiā, circumveniē, artificiūs, and observe how the English word retains the meaning of the Latin.

EXERCISE XLVI

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 383; 384; 506. B. 191, 2; 192, 1; 338, 3. G. 356, N. 1; 359; 432, R. H. 433; 434, 2; 628.

Inflection: hortor; porta; certior; hīc.

Order of words: the beginning of the sentence is a place of emphasis.

Prescribed list:

aggerem	aditus	subsidiō	cursum
vīneās	valle	appulsīs	magnopere
turrīs	māteriam	repentīnum	hortātūr
portuī	exstruit	dēdūcit	rūrsus
portam	classe		

THE ROMANS PREPARE TO STORM MASSILIA

Dum haec¹ in Hispāniā geruntur, Gāius Trebōnius lēgātus, qui ad oppugnātiōnem Massiliae relictus erat, duābus ex² partibus aggerem, vīneās, turrīsque ad oppidum agere īstituit. Īna erat proxima portuī nāvālibusque, altera ad portam quā est aditus ex Galliā atque Hispāniā, ad id mare quod adiacet ad īstium Rhodanī. Massilia enim ferē ex tribus oppidī partibus marī alluitur; reliqua quārta est, quae aditum habeat ab terrā. Huius quoque spatī pars ea quae ad arcem pertinet, locī nātūrā et valle altissimā mūnīta, longam et difficilem³ habet oppugnātiōnem. Ad ea perficienda opera Gāius Trebōnius magnam īūmentōrum atque hominum multitūdinem ex omni prōvinciā vocat⁴; vimina māteriamque com̄portārī iubet. Quibus comparātīs rēbus aggerem in altitūdinem pedum octōgintā exstruit. Interim Lūcius Nāsidius, ab Gnaeō

Pompēiō cum classe nāvium sēdecim, in quibus paucae erant aerātae, Lūciō Domitiō Massiliēnsibusque subsidiō missus, fretō⁵ Siciliae imprūdente atque inopinante Cūriōne⁶ pervehitur, appul-sisque Messānam⁷ nāvibus, atque inde propter repēntīnum terrōrem prīncipum⁸ ac senātūs fugā factā, nāvem ex nāvālibus eōrum dēdūcit. Hāc adiūntā⁹ ad reliquās nāvis cursum Massiliām versus¹⁰ perficit, praemissāque clam nāviculā¹¹ Domitium Massiliēnsisque dē suō adventū certiōrēs facit eōsque magnopere hortātur ut rūrsus cum Brūti¹² classe additīs suīs auxiliīs¹³ cōnfligant.

DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 1, 3

VOCABULARY

nāvālia, ium, n., <i>dockyard</i>	aerātus, a, um, <i>bronze-covered</i>
mare, is, n., <i>sea</i> (marine)	fretum, ī, n., <i>strait</i>
adiaceō, 2, uī, ——, <i>lie near</i> (adjacent)	imprūdēns, imprūdentis, <i>off one's</i>
ōstium, ōstī, n., <i>mouth</i>	<i>guard</i>
alluō, 3, uī, ——, <i>wash</i>	inopīnāns, inopīnantis, <i>not ex-</i>
arx, arcis, f., <i>citadel</i>	<i>pecting</i>
iūmentum, ī, n., <i>beast of burden</i>	cōnfligō, 3, flixi, flictus, <i>contend</i>
vīmen, inis, n., <i>withe</i>	<i>with</i> (conflict)

NOTES

¹ haec: the defeat of Cæsar's enemies. ² ex: *on*. ³ difficilem: compare with difficultās and with facilis. ⁴ vocat: synonym of appellō. ⁵ fretō: shows place. ⁶ Cūriōne: the proprætor of Sicily. ⁷ Messānam: the city of Messina. ⁸ prīncipum: with fugā. ⁹ adiūntā: ad + iungō. ¹⁰ versus: *toward*. This preposition follows the word which it governs. ¹¹ nāviculā: nāvis + cula, *little*. ¹² Brūti: the commander of Cæsar's fleet. ¹³ additīs . . . auxiliīs: states a reason for cōnfligant.



PILA

EXERCISE XLVII

Grammar: A. 349, *a*; 452, 1: 506: 563. B. 204, 1: 330: 338, 3; 295, 1. G. 374; 422; 432, R.: 546. H. 450; 451; 628; 565.

Inflection: contendō: tempus: superus (compare).

Order of words: an emphatic genitive depending on an adjective is usually placed before it.

Prescribed list:

refēcerat	dēfuit	gubernātōrum	inectīs
remānserat	paulō	nactī	classe
prōiectī	paulātim	ferreīs	profūgit

BRUTUS, AT THE HEAD OF THE ROMAN FLEET, ENGAGES
BATTLE WITH THE SHIPS OF THE MASSILIANS

Eōdem¹ Brūtus contendit auctō nāvium numerō. Nam ad eās quae factae erant Arelāte² per Caesarem captīvae Massiliēnsium accesserant sex. Hās superiōribus diēbus refēcerat atque omnibus rēbus īstrūxerat. Itaque suōs cohortātus, quōs³ integrōs superāvissent, ut victōs contemnerent, plēnus speī bonae atque animī adversus eōs proficiscitur. Facile erat ex castrīs Gāi Trebōnī atque omnibus superiōribus locīs prōspicere in urbem, ut⁴ omnis iuventūs, quae in oppidō remānserat, omnēsque superiōris aetātis cum liberīs atque uxōribus pūblicisque custōdiis aut ex mūrō ad caelum manūs tenderent,⁵ aut templa deōrum immortālium adīrent et ante simulācra prōiecti victōriam ab hīs exposcerent.⁶ Commissō proeliō Massiliēnsibus⁷ rēs nūlla ad virtūtem dēfuit; sed memorēs⁸ eōrum praeceptōrum quae paulō ante ab suis accēperant, hōc⁹ animō dēcertābant ut nūllum aliud tempus ad cōnandum habitūrī vidērentur. Diductīsque¹⁰ nostrīs paulātim nāvibus et artificiō gubernātōrum et mōbilitātī nāvium locus dabātur, et si quandō¹¹ nostrī facultātem nactī ferreīs manibus¹² inectis nāvem religāverant, undique suis labōrantibus¹³ succurrēbant. Ex Massiliēnsium classe quīnque sunt dēpressae, quattuor captae, ūna cum Nāsidiānīs profūgit.

VOCABULARY

integer, <i>gra</i> , <i>grum</i> , <i>fresh</i>	<i>custōdia</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>guard</i> (custody)
contemnō, <i>3</i> , <i>tempſī</i> , <i>temptus</i> , <i>de-</i> <i>ſpīſe</i>	<i>caelum</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>sky</i>
plēnus, <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>full</i> (plenty)	<i>deus</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>god</i>
prōſpiciō, <i>3</i> . <i>ſpexī</i> , <i>spectus</i> , <i>look</i> <i>forth</i>	<i>ſimulācrum</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>image</i>
iuventūs, <i>ūtis</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>youth</i> (juvenile)	<i>praeceptum</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>order</i>
aetās, <i>ātis</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>age</i>	<i>artificium</i> , <i>artifi'cī</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>skill</i>
uxor, <i>ōris</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>wife</i>	<i>mōbilitās</i> , <i>ātis</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>moving</i>
	<i>relīgō</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>grappling</i>
	<i>ſuccurrō</i> , <i>3</i> , <i>curri</i> , <i>curſum</i> , <i>rush to help</i>

NOTES

¹ *eōdem*: i.e. to Taurois, a fortress of the Massilians. ² *Arelāte*: *Arelas*, a town near Massilia. ³ *quōs*: understand *eōs* as the antecedent, with which *victōs* agrees. ⁴ *ut: how*. ⁵ *tenderent*: think of the compound extenderent. ⁶ *exposcerent*: synonym of *poſcō*. ⁷ *Massiliēnsibus*: depends on *dēfuit*. ⁸ *memorēs*: adjective. Think of *memoria*. ⁹ *hōc*: *such*. ¹⁰ *dīductis: dī*, *apart*, + *dūcō*. ¹¹ *quandō: at any time*. ¹² *mani-*
būſ: prongs, i.e. like hooked fingers. ¹³ *labōrantibus*: translate by a clause.

Observe the force of the prefix in *refēcerat*, *remānſerat*, *adirent*, *prōiecti*, *dēfuit*, *accēperant*.

EXERCISE XLVIII

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 504; 558; 563. B. 191, 2; 338, 1; 295, 1, 3. G. 356; 428; 555, 1; 546. H. 433; 626; 595, 2; 565.

Inflection: *ferō*; *opus*; *nūllus*.

Order of words: a complementary infinitive usually precedes the verb on which it depends.

Prescribed list:

legiōnāriīs	humilem	moram	docent
administrābant	hinc	quōminus	praedae
crēbrīs	saxa	nūtum	generis
ēruptiōnibus	īnfima	vēſtīgiō	prōnūntiantur
turrim			

THE ROMANS BUILD A TOWER AND UNDERMINE
A TURRET OF THE MASSILIANS, WHO PLEAD FOR
MERCY

Massiliēnsēs nihilō¹ sētius² ad dēfēnsiōnem³ urbis reliqua appa-
rāre⁴ coēpērunt. Est animadversum ab legionāriis qui dextram
partem operis administrābant, ex crēbrīs hostium ēruptiōnibus,
magnō sibi esse praesidiō posse sī ibi prō castellō ac receptāculō
turrim ex latere sub mūrō fēcissent. Quam primō ad repentinōs
incursūs humilem parvamque fēcērunt. Hūc sē referēbant; hinc,
sī qua maior oppresserat vīs, prōpugnābant⁵; hinc ad repellendum
et prōsequendum hostem prōcurrēbant. Posteā vērō, ut⁶ est rērum
omnium magister ūsus,⁷ inventum est⁸ magnō esse ūsuī posse sī
haec esset in altitudinem turrī clāta.⁹ Id perfectum est. Ex eā
turrī mūsculum pedēs sexāgintā longum ad hostium turrim mū-
rumque facere īstituērunt. Hoc opus omne tēctum vīneis ad
turrim hostium admovent, ut aedificiō iungātur. Quō malō per-
territī subitō oppidānī¹⁰ saxa in mūsculum dēvolvunt. Interim sub
mūsculō mīlitēs īfima saxa turrī hostium convellunt. Nōn datur
libera mūrī dēfendendī facultās. Complūribus lapidibus turrī sub-
ductis repentinā ruīnā pars eius turrī concidit, cum hostēs urbī
direptiōne perterritī inermēs ad lēgātōs atque exercitūm supplicēs
manūs tendunt. Quā novā rē oblātā¹¹ omnis administratiō¹² bellī
cōnsistit mīlitēsque āversī ā proeliō ad studiū audiēdī et cog-
nōscēdī feruntur. Ubi hostēs ad lēgātōs exercitūmque pēvēnērunt,
ūniversī sē ad pedēs prōiciunt; īrant ut adventus Caesari exspec-
tētūr. Captam¹³ suam urbēm vidēre¹⁴; opera perfecta, turrī
subrutam; itaque ab dēfēnsiōnē dēsistere. Nūllam exorī¹⁵ moram
posse quōminus,¹⁶ cum vēnisset, sī imperāta¹⁷ nōn facerent ad
nūtum, ē vēstīgiō dīriperentur.¹⁸ Docent, sī omnīnō turrī conci-
dīsset, nōn posse mīlitēs continēri quīn spē praedae in urbē
irrumperent urbēmque dēlērent. Haec atque eiusdem generis com-
plūra, ut ab hominibus doctis,¹⁹ magnā cum misericordiā flētūque²⁰
prōnūntiantur. — DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 8, 10, 12

VOCABULARY

receptāculum, ī, n., <i>place of refuge</i>	convellō, 3, vellī, vulsus, <i>loosen</i>
later, eris, m., <i>brick</i>	concidō, 3, cidī, —, <i>collapse</i>
incursus, ūs, m., <i>onset</i>	dīreptiō, ūnis, f., <i>pillage</i>
prōcurrō, 3, currī, cursum, <i>run forth</i>	tendō, 3, tetendī, tentus, <i>extend</i>
magister, trī, m., <i>master, teacher</i>	subruō, 3, ruī, rutus, <i>undermine</i>
mūsculus, ī, m., <i>covered passageway</i>	urbs, urbīs, f., <i>city</i>
tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, <i>protect</i>	irrumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, <i>burst into</i>
vīnea, ae, f., <i>shed</i>	dēleō, 2, lēvī, lētus, <i>destroy</i>
dēvolvō, 3, volvī, volūtus, <i>roll down</i>	misericordia, ae, f., <i>wretchedness</i>

NOTES

¹ nihilō: = nihil. ² sētius: = minus. ³ dēfēnsiōnem: dēfendō + tiō.
⁴ apparāre: ad + parō. ⁵ prōpugnābant: observe the prefix. ⁶ ut: as.
⁷ ūsus: *experience*. ⁸ inventum est: in, upon, + veniō. English derivative?
⁹ ēlāta esset: ex + ferō. ¹⁰ oppidānī: oppidum + ānus, *belonging to*.
¹¹ oblātā: from offerō. English derivative? ¹² administrātiō: administrō + tiō.
¹³ captam: indirect discourse depending on vidēre. ¹⁴ vidēre: indirect discourse depending on the idea of saying implied in ūrant. ¹⁵ exorīrī: synonym of orior. ¹⁶ quōminus: *so that . . . not*. ¹⁷ imperāta: neuter participle of imperō, used as a noun. ¹⁸ dīriperentur: the same root is found in the noun dīreptiō. ¹⁹ doctis: *learned*, ironical with ut. ²⁰ flētū: a verbal noun from fleō.

EXERCISE XLIX

Grammar: A. 410; 531; 546; 558. B. 218, 1; 282, 1; 288, 1, B; 295, 3. G. 407; 545, 1, 3; 585; 555, 1. H. 477; 568; 600, II, 1; 595, 2.

Inflection: possum: turris: quīdam: aegrē (compare).

Order of words: the adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it modifies.

Prescribed list:

dēducunt	at	ventō	nactī
oppugnātiōne	occāsiōnem	sagittīs	aggerem
genere	aliquot	fugientīs	ēruptiōne
remittunt	portīs	tempestātis	reficere

THE MASSILIANS DISREGARD THE TRUCE AND SET FIRE
TO THE SIEGEWORKS OF THE ROMANS

Quibus rēbus¹ commōtī lēgātī mīlitēs ex opere dēdūcunt, opugnātiōne dēsistunt; operibus custōdiās relinquunt. Indūtiārum quōdam genere misericordiā² factō adventus Caesaris exspectātur. Nūllum ex mūrō, nūllum ā nostrīs mittitur tēlum; ut³ rē cōfēctā, omnēs cūram et diligentiam remittunt. Caesar enim per litterās Trebōniō magnō opere⁴ mandāverat nē per vim oppidum expugnāri paterētur, nē gravius permōtī mīlitēs et dēfectiōnis odiō et contemptiōne sui⁵ et diūtinō⁶ labōre omnīs pūberēs interficerent; quod⁷ sē factūrōs minābantur, aegrēque tunc sunt retentī quīn oppidum irrumperent, graviterque eam rem tulērunt, quod stetisse per Trebōnium quōminus oppidō potīrentur vidēbātur. At hostēs sine fidē tempus atque occāsiōnem fraudis ac dolī quaerunt, interiectīsque⁸ aliquot diēbus, subitō meridiānō tempore, cum aliis discessisset, aliis ex diūtinō labōre in ipsīs operibus quiētī sē dedisset, arma vērō omnia reposita⁹ contēcta que essent, portīs forās ērumpunt,¹⁰ secundō magnōque ventō ignem operibus īferunt. Nostrī repētīnā fortūnā permōtī arma quae possunt arripiunt; aliū ex castrīs sēsē incitant. Fit in hostīs impetus eōrum, sed dē mūrō sagittīs tormētīsque fugientīs persequī¹¹ prohibentur. Ita multōrum mēnsium labor hostiū perfidiā et vī tempestātis pūncō temporis interiit. Temptāvērunt hoc idem Massiliēnsēs posterō diē. Eandem nactī tempestātem maiōre cum fidūciā¹² ad alteram turrim aggeremque ērūptiōne pugnāvērunt multumque ignem intulērunt. Sed ut superiōris temporis contentiōnem¹³ nostrī omnem remiserant,¹⁴ ita proximī diēi cāsū admonitī¹⁵ omnia ad dēfēnsiōnem parāverant. Itaque multīs interfēctīs reliquōs īfectā¹⁶ rē in oppidum reppulērunt. Trebōnius autem ea quae sunt āmissa multō maiōre mīlitū studiō administrāre et reficere īstituit. Nam ubi tantōs suōs labōrēs cecidisse vidērunt, aggerem novī generis aequā ferē altitūdine fēcērunt. Celeriter rēs administrātur. Portae ērūptiōnis causā in mūrō relinquuntur. — DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 13, 14, 15

VOCABULARY

<i>custōdia, ae, f., guard</i>	<i>dolus, ī, m., trickery</i>
<i>indūtiae, ārum, f., truce</i>	<i>merīdiānus, a, um, of midday</i>
<i>misericordia, ae, f., pity</i>	<i>contegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, cover</i>
<i>cūra, ae, f., care</i>	<i>forās, forth</i>
<i>dēfectiō, ūnis, f., revolt</i>	<i>arripiō, 3, ripuī, reptus, seize</i>
<i>odium, odī, n., strong dislike</i>	<i>tormentum, ī, n., hurling machine</i>
<i>pūberēs, um, m., adults</i>	<i>perfidia, ae, f., treachery</i>
<i>minor, ī, threaten</i>	<i>pūnctum, ī, n., moment</i>
<i>irrumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, break into</i>	<i>intereō, 4, īi, itum, perish</i>
<i>stō, ī, stetī, statum, stand, (with per)</i>	
<i>stand to one's account</i>	

NOTES

¹ *quibus rēbus*: the fall of a great tower which the Massilians had erected.
² *misericordiā*: states the cause of *factō*. ³ *ut: as.* ⁴ *magnō opere*: has the force of an adverb. ⁵ *suī*: *shown to them*. To whom does *suī* refer?
⁶ *diūtinō*: *diū* + *tinus*, a time suffix. ⁷ *quod*: refers to the preceding clause. ⁸ *interiectīs*: observe the composition. ⁹ *reposita*: observe the composition. ¹⁰ *ērumpunt*: compare with *irrumpō*. ¹¹ *persequī*: observe the composition. ¹² *fidūciā*: synonym of *fidēs*. ¹³ *conten-*
tiōnem: English derivative? ¹⁴ *remīserant*: *had given up*. ¹⁵ *admonitiō*: composition? ¹⁶ *infēctā*: composition?

Observe the position of the adverbs in the passage, and determine the reason for the exceptions to the rule stated above.

EXERCISE I.

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 414; 489; 496. B. 191, 1; 223; 336, 1; 337, 2, *a, f.* G. 356; 403; 282; 665; 666. H. 433; 479, 3; 460; 638, 1.

Inflection: *trādō*; *auxilium*: *gravis*: *ipse*.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity usually precede the nouns which they modify.

Prescribed list:

<i>dēfessī</i>	<i>ēruptiōnibus</i>	<i>familiāribus</i>	<i>portum</i>
<i>bis</i>	<i>vīctūs</i>	<i>cōnscederat</i>	<i>ancorīs</i>
<i>crēbrīs</i>	<i>dēdere</i>	<i>nactus</i>	<i>cōnspectū</i>

THE MASSILIANS, BESET BY MISFORTUNE. SURRENDER

Massiliēnsēs omnibus dēfessī malis, reī frūmentāiae ad summam inopiam adducti, bis nāvālī¹ proeliō superāti, crēbrīs ēruptiōnibus fūsi, gravi etiam pestilentiā² cōnflictātī ex diūtinā³ conclūsiōne et mūtatiōne vīctūs (pānicō enim vetere atque hordeō corruptō omnēs alēbantur, quod ad huius modi cāsūs⁴ antiquitus⁵ parātum in pūblicum⁶ contulerant), dēiectā turri, labefactā magnā parte mūri, auxiliis prōvinciārum et exercituum dēspērātīs,⁷ quōs in Caesaris potestātem vēnisse cognōverant, sēsē dēdere sine fraude cōstituunt. Sed paucis ante⁸ diēbus Lūcius Domitius cognitā Massiliēnsium voluntātē, nāvibus tribus comparātis, ex quibus duās familiāribus suis attribuerat, ūnam ipse cōnsenderat, nactus turbidam tempestātem profectus est. Hunc cōnspicātē nāvēs, quae missū⁹ Brūti cōnsuētūdine cotidiānā ad¹⁰ portum excubābant, sublātis ancoris, sequī coepērunt. Ex his ūnum ipsīs nāvigium¹¹ contendit et fugere persevērāvit¹² auxiliōque tempestatis ex cōnspectū abiit,¹³ duo perterrita¹⁴ concursū nostrārum nāvium sēsē in portum recēpērunt. Massiliēnsēs arma tormentaque ex oppidō, ut est imperātum, prōferunt, nāvis ex portū nāvālibusque ēdūcunt, pecūniām ex pūblicō trādunt. Quibus rēbus cōflectīs, Caesar, magis eōs prō nōmine et vetustātē¹⁵ quam prō meritīs in sē cīvitātis cōservāns, duās ibi legiōnēs praeſidiō¹⁶ reliquit. — DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 22

VOCABULARY

malum, ī, n., *civil*
 fundō, 3. fūdī, fūsus, *rout*
 cōnflictātus, a, um, *tormented*
 conclūsiō, ūnis, f., *blockade*
 mūtatiō, ūnis, f., *change*
 pānicum, ī, n., *millet*
 hordeum, ī, n., *barley*
 corruptus, a, um, *damaged*
 alō, 3. uī, tus, *feed*
 labefactus, a, um, *shaken*

fraus, fraudis, f., *deception*
 attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*
 turbidus, a, um, *boisterous*
 tempestās, ātis, f., *weather*
 excubō, 1, *keep watch*
 tormentum, ī, n., *hurling machine*
 nāvālia, ium, n., *dockyard*
 pecūnia, ae, f., *money*
 cōservō, 1, *save*

NOTES

¹ nāvāli: nāvis + ālis, *belonging to.* ² pestilentiā: English derivative?
³ diūtina: diū + tinus, a time suffix. ⁴ cāsūs: *chances.* ⁵ antiquitus: adverb from antiquus, synonym of *vetus.* ⁶ in pūblicum: *for public use.*
⁷ dēspērātis: dē + spērō. English derivative? ⁸ ante: adverb. ⁹ missū: verbal noun from mittō. ¹⁰ ad: *near.* ¹¹ nāvīgīum: synonym of nāvis.
¹² persevērāvit: English derivative? ¹³ abiit: composition? ¹⁴ perterrita: nāvīgia is understood. ¹⁵ vetustātē: *vetus + tās.* ¹⁶ praeſidiō: states what the legiōnēs were for.

Determine which of the participles in the passage denote *time* and which denote *cause.*

EXERCISE LI

Grammar: A. 504, *b*; 540; 549. B. 338, *1, c*; 286, *1, 2.* G. 428, *2*; 540; 586. H. 475, *2*; 588, *I*; 598.

Inflection: volō; equitātūs; ipse.

Order of words: an adjective usually is placed immediately before or after the word which it modifies, unless a limiting word or phrase intervenes.

GALBA IS STATIONED IN THE ALPS TO KEEP THE
ROADS OPEN

Cum in Ītaliā proficīcerētur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātīs,¹ Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finib⁹ Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpīs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod² iter³ per Alpīs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercatōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefieri volēbat. Huic⁴ permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba secundis aliquot⁵ proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūrib⁹ eōrum expugnātīs, missis ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortīs duās in Nantuātībus collocāre et⁶ ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus

in **valle**, nōn magnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimis montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partīs flūmine dividerētur,⁷ alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam⁸ ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, I

VOCABULARY

duodecimus, a, um, <i>twelfth</i>	adiciō, 3, iēcī, <i>iectus</i> , <i>lie near to</i>
quō, <i>whither</i>	plānitiēs, ēī, f., <i>plain</i>
portōria, ūrum, n., <i>customs duties</i>	vacuus, a, um, <i>empty</i> (vacuum)
patefaciō, 3, fēcī, <i>factus</i> , <i>throw open</i>	attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, <i>assign</i>
arbitror, 1, <i>think</i>	

NOTES

¹ Nantuātīs, etc.: for the location of these tribes, consult the map.
² quod, etc.: this clause explains *causa*. ³ iter: the voice of *patefierī* shows that *iter* must be subject. ⁴ huic: refers to Galba. ⁵ aliquot: indeclinable. ⁶ collocāre et: what word does *et* connect with *collocāre*?
⁷ cum . . . dīviderētur: states the reason for *concessit* and *attribuit*.
⁸ vacuam: predicate adjective with *relictam*.

Observe the position of the adjectives in the passage with reference to the words which they modify.

EXERCISE LII

Grammar: A. 569, 2; 579; 580. B. 297, 2; 313; 314, 1. G. 553, 3; 648; 650. H. 571, 1; 641; 642; 643.

Inflection: eō; diēs; omnis.

Order of words: a preposition regularly precedes the word which it governs.

THE MOUNTAIN TRIBES RENEW THE WAR AND
OVERPOWER THE ROMAN SOLDIERS

Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque¹ eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnīs noctū² discessisse,

montīsque³ quī impendērent ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id **aliquot** dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Galli bellī **renovandī** legiōnisque opprimendae cōsilium caperent: pīmum, quod⁴ legiōnem, neque eam⁵ plēnissimam dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant absentibus, propter paucitātem⁶ dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem⁷ locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in **vallem** dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē pīmum quidem impe-
tum suum posse sustinērī⁸ exīstīmābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab
sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine⁹ dolēbant,¹⁰ et Rōmānōs nōn
sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis¹¹ culmina
Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae¹² adiungere
sibi persuāsum habēbant.¹³ — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 2

VOCABULARY

eō, <i>thither</i>	abstrahō, 3, <i>trāxi, trāctus, drāto</i>
impendeō, 2, —, —, <i>overhang</i>	away from
plēnus, a, um, <i>full</i>	culmen, inis, n., <i>summit</i>
singillātim, <i>one at a time</i>	

NOTES

¹ frūmentum: the voice of *comportārī* shows that this cannot be its object.

² noctū: = nocte. ³ montīs: for the syntax, observe the voice of *tenērī*.

⁴ quod, etc.: a clause which explains causīs. How many other reasons does Cæsar give? ⁵ eam: refers to legiōnem. ⁶ paucitātem: pauci + tās.

⁷ inīquitātem: in + aequus + tās. ⁸ sustinērī: complementary infinitive.

⁹ nōmine: *under the name*. ¹⁰ dolēbant: an indirect statement depends on it.

¹¹ possessiōnis: understand causā. ¹² prōvinciae: for the case, consider adiungere. ¹³ sibi persuāsum habēbant: *were persuaded*.

Think of English words from *factus*, *concesserat*, *impendērent*, *acciderat*, *renovandī*, *dēspiciēbant*, *culmina*, *adiungere*, and observe how the English word retains the meaning of the Latin.

EXERCISE LIII

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 409, *a*; 420, 1, 2; 454. B. 201, 2; 218, 8; 227, 2, *a*, *d*; 330. G. 369; 405; 410; 422, 4. H. 442; 477, II; 489, 1; 615, 1.

Inflection: possum; salūs; celeriter (compare).

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, normally follows the noun which it limits.

A COUNCIL IS CALLED TO CONSIDER WAYS OF MEETING
THE IMPENDING DANGER

His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum mūnitionēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum,¹ quod² dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum³ exīstīmāverat, cōsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere⁴ coepit. Quō in cōsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta⁵ cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī⁶ neque commeātūs suppor-tārī⁷ interclūsis itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā⁸ salūte nōn nūllae eius modi⁹ sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedimentis relictis, ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contendenter.¹⁰ Maiōrī tamen partī¹¹ placuit¹² hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 3

VOCABULARY

plēnē, *fully*
eō, *thither*

placeō, *2, uī, itum, please*

NOTES

¹ *esset prōvīsum*: impersonal. ² *quod*: conjunction. ³ *timendum*: what is understood? Consider the finite verb of the clause. ⁴ *exquirere*: *ex + quaerō*. ⁵ *complēta*: predicate adjective. ⁶ *venīrī*: understand

posset, used impersonally. ⁷ supportāri: sub, up to, + portō. ⁸ dēspērātā: composition? ⁹ modi: descriptive genitive. ¹⁰ contendenter: states the purpose of sententiae dīcēbantur. ¹¹ parti: for the case, consider the verb. ¹² placuit: impersonal.

Find the phrases in the passage which contain a genitive, observe in each case the position of the genitive, and determine the reason for the position.

EXERCISE LIV

Grammar: A. 400; 401; 418; 463. B. 214, 1, b; 226; 335. G. 405; 397; 647. H. 462; 480; 610.

Inflection: dō; brevis; suī.

Order of words: an adverb normally is placed before the word which it limits.

OUR MEN, ATTACKED BY THE ENEMY, ARE AT
A DISADVANTAGE BECAUSE OF THEIR SMALL
NUMBERS

Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus¹ quās cōnstituissent collocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere,² lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī primō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus³ premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc⁴ superārī, quod⁵ diūturnitātē pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant,—quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem⁶ fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō⁷ ex pugnā excēdendī sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōstiterat relinquendī ac suī⁸ recipiendī facultās dabātur.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 4

VOCABULARY

intericiō, 3. iēcī, iectus, intervene	dēfēnsor, ūris, m., <i>defender</i>
gaesum, 1, n., <i>javelin</i>	diūturnitās, ātis, f., <i>long duration</i>
integer, gra, grum, <i>fresh</i>	

NOTES

¹ *rēbus*: for the case, consider the verb of the clause. ² *dēcurrere*: historical infinitive, used in lively narrative instead of the indicative. The passage contains several other examples of this use of the infinitive. ³ *dēfēnsōribus*: with *nūdāta*. ⁴ *hōc*: ablative of respect. ⁵ *quod*: conjunction. ⁶ *paucitātem*: *pauci* + *tās*. ⁷ *dēfessō*: understand *homini*. Take with *dabātur*. ⁸ *suī*: refers to *sauciō*.

Think of English words from *brevī*, *tempus*, *omnibus*, *integrīs*, *frūstrā*, *superiōre*, *succēdēbant*, *poterat*, and observe how the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English derivative.

EXERCISE LV

Grammar: A. 282; 345; 563. B. 169, 1; 203, 1; 295, 1. G. 320; 365; 546. H. 393; 440, 3; 565.

Inflection: *faciō*; *vīs*; *certior*.

Order of words: a common arrangement of the parts of the predicate, unless modified by the general rule of emphasis, is: indirect object, direct object, adverb, verb.

THE ROMANS DECIDE THAT IN A SALLY LIES THEIR
ONLY HOPE OF RELIEF

Cum iam amplius hōrīs¹ sex continenter pugnārētūr² ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īstārent languidiōribusque³ nostris vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta⁴ cāsum, Pūblius Sextius Baculus, primī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum⁵ vulneribus diximus, et item Gāius Volūsēnus, tribūnus militū, vir et cōsili magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrit atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxiliū experīrentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit⁶ paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post⁷ datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 5

VOCABULARY

<i>languidus, a, um, weary</i>	<i>accurrō, 3, currī, cursum, run to</i>
<i>scindō, 3, scidī, scissus,</i>	<i>ērumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, burst</i>
<i>split</i>	<i>forth (eruption)</i>

NOTES

¹ *hōris*: ablative with *amplius*. ² *pugnārētur*, etc.: these verbs are in the subjunctive because the clauses describe the circumstances that go to make up the critical condition in which Galba finds himself. ³ *languidiōribus*: a part of the ablative absolute. ⁴ *perducta*: with *esset*. ⁵ *cōflectum*: what is understood? ⁶ *certiōrēs* *facit*: equivalent to a verb of commanding, the commands being expressed in the following subjunctives. ⁷ *post*: adverb.

Select words in the passage which seem emphatic, and determine the reason for considering them so.

EXERCISE LVI

Grammar: A. 370; 419; 423, 1; 540. B. 187, III; 227; 230; 286, 1. G. 347; 409; 393; 540. H. 429; 489; 486; 588, I.

Inflection: *fiō*; *alius*.

Order of words: a demonstrative pronoun usually precedes the word which it modifies.

THE ROMANS BY A SALLY ROUT THE ENEMY AND
RETURN TO THE PROVINCE

Quod¹ iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque sui² colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs³ interficiunt, et ex hominum mīlibus amplius trīgintā, quem numerum⁴ barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertīā parte imperfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armīsque⁵ exūtis sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod⁶ saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō⁷

sē in hiberna cōsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā⁸ permōtus posterō diē omnibus eius vīcī⁹ aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante¹⁰ incolūmem legiōnem in Nantuātīs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 6

VOCABULARY

colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, <i>gather together</i> (collection)	fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, <i>rout</i> exuō, 3, uī, ūtus, <i>strip</i>
commūtō, 1, <i>change</i> (commute)	meminī, isse (defective), <i>remember</i>

NOTES

¹ quod: pronoun; understand facere. ² suī: refers to hostibus.
³ circumventōs: translate as if it were a finite verb with the same form as interficiunt. ⁴ numerum: subject of vēnisse. ⁵ armis: ablative of separation. ⁶ quod: conjunction. ⁷ aliō: note the emphasis. ⁸ inopiā: states the cause of permōtus. ⁹ vīcī: a genitive often stands between an adjective and its noun. ¹⁰ dēmorante: synonym of moror.

EXERCISE LVII

Grammar: A. 345, a; 419, a; 423, 1, 2. B. 203, 1; 227, 1; 230; 181, 1. G. 365; 409; 393; 336. H. 440, 3; 489; 486; 417.

Inflection: coepī; opus; exterus (compare).

Order of words: the limiting word or phrase, unless unemphatic, precedes the word which it limits.

The Veneti, a tribe occupying the seacoast northwest of the River Loire, form a union to resist the Romans. They have a strong navy and live in a section hard to invade. Cæsar understands the seriousness of the danger and orders a large fleet of war vessels to be built and equipped.

THE LOCATION OF THE TOWNS OF THE VENETI AND
THEIR MEANS OF DEFENSE

Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita¹ in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiīsque² neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō³ sē aēstus incitāvisset, quod⁴ accidit semper hōrārum duodecim

spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadis afflictārentur.⁵ Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur. Ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō **marī** aggere ac **mōlibus** atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre⁶ fortūnīs suīs cooperant, magnō numerō nāvium **appulsō**, cuius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant⁷ omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus isdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō⁸ facilis magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs **tempestātibus** dētinēbantur,⁹ summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnis aestibus, **rārīs** ac prope nūllis portibus, difficultātēs nāvigandī. — DE BELLO GALICO, III, 12

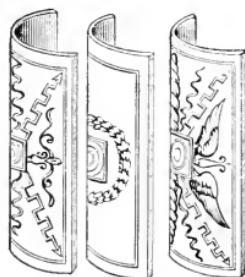
VOCABULARY

<i>situs, ūs, m., situation</i>	<i>quandō, at any time</i>
<i>lingula, ae, f., little tongue (of land)</i>	<i>extrūdō, 3, trūsī, trūsus, shut out</i>
<i>semper, always</i>	<i>vāstus, a, um, vast</i>

NOTES

¹ posita: agrees with a pronoun referring to **oppidōrum** and subject of **habērent**. ² prōmunturiīs: English derivative? ³ altō: *the deep*. ⁴ quod: refers to the fact stated in the preceding clause. ⁵ afflictārentur: English derivative? ⁶ dēspērāre: composition? ⁷ dēportābant: composition? ⁸ eō: *for this reason*. ⁹ dētinēbantur: composition?

Observe the large number of examples of the ablative absolute in the passage and determine the best way to translate each one.



SHIELDS

EXERCISE LVIII

Grammar: A. 414: 415; 506. B. 223; 224; 338, 3. G. 403: 400; 432, R. H. 479; 473, 2; 628.

Inflection: *fiō*; *flūctus*; *plānior*.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, follows the noun which it limits.

THE SHIPS OF THE VENETI AND THEIR EQUIPMENT

Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum¹ factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō **plāniōrēs** quam nostrārum nāvium,² quō³ facilius vada ac dēcessum **aestūs** excipere possent; prōrae⁴ ad modum ērēctae atque item **puppēs**, ad magnitūdinem **flūctuum** **tempestātumque** accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex **rōbore** ad quamvis vim et contumēliam preferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus⁵ in altitūdinem trabibus, cōfixa clāvis **ferreīs** digitī pollicis⁶ crassitūdine; **ancorae** prō **fūnibus** ferreīs catēnīs revinctae⁷; pellēs prō **vēlīs** alūtaeque tenuiter cōflectae,⁸ sīve propter inopiam līnī atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam⁹ sīve eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs **ventōrum** sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium **regī** vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.¹⁰ — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 13

VOCABULARY

carīna, ae, f., <i>keel</i>	cōfīxus, a, um, <i>fastened together</i>
aliquantus, a, um, <i>some, somewhat</i>	clāvus, ī, m., <i>nail</i>
dēcessus, ūs, m., <i>ebb</i>	crassitūdō, inis, f., <i>thickness</i>
prōra, ae, f., <i>bow</i>	alūta, ae, f., <i>leather</i>
admodum, <i>very much</i>	tenuiter, <i>thinly</i>
ērēctus, a, um, <i>raised</i>	sīve . . . sīve, <i>whether . . . or</i>
trānstrum, ī, n., <i>thwart</i>	līnum, ī, n., <i>linen</i>

NOTES

¹ *modum*: *fashion*. ² *nāvium*: understand *carīnae*. ³ *quō*: introduces a clause of purpose containing a comparative. ⁴ *prōrae*: understand *erant*. ⁵ *pedālibus*: *pēs* + *ālis*, *belonging to, of a*. ⁶ *digitī pollicis*:

thumb. ⁷ *revinctae: re + vincīō.* ⁸ *cōflectae: tanned.* ⁹ *inscientiam:*
composition? ¹⁰ *arbitrābantur: synonym of existimō.*

Think of English words from *factae*, *plāniōrēs*, *excipere*, *flūctuum*, *tōtae*, *cōflectae*, *onera*, and observe how the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English derivative.

EXERCISE LIX

Grammar: A. 374; *a*; 537, 1; 569, 2. B. 189, 1; 284, 1; 297, 2. G. 355; 552; 553, 4. H. 431; 570; 571, 1.

Inflection: ferō; vīs; facile (compare).

Order of words: the words of a phrase, clause, or sentence are arranged from the beginning in the order of their importance in the mind of the writer.

WHY THE ROMAN SHIPS ARE INFERIOR TO THOSE OF THE VENETI

Cum his¹ nāvibus nostrae **classi**² eius modi congressus³ erat ut
ūnā celeritāte et pulsū⁴ **rēmōrum** praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā,
prō vi **tempestātum**, illis⁵ essent **aptiōra** et accommodātiōra. Neque
enim iis⁶ nostrae **rōstrō** **nocēre** poterant, tanta in iis erat firmitūdō,⁷
neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur,⁸ et eādem dē
causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbāntur. Accēdēbat⁹ ut, cum
saevīre ventus coepisset et sē **ventō** dedissent, et tempestātem fer-
rent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius et ab **aestū** relictæ nihil
saxa et **cautīs** timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostris nāvibus
cāsus erat extimēscendus.¹⁰ — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 13

VOCABULARY

cōpula, ae, f., *grappling hook* tūtē, *safely*

NOTES

¹ his: i.e. of the Veneti. ² classi: shows the possessor. ³ con-
gressus: noun from congregior. ⁴ pulsū: noun from pellō. ⁵ illis:
i.e. his nāvibus. ⁶ iis: with nocēre. ⁷ firmitūdō: firmus + tūdō.

⁸ adigēbātur: was hurled to (them). ⁹ accēdēbat: another fact was.
¹⁰ extimēscendus: synonym of timeō.

Observe the phrases in the passage, noting how their position in the sentence expresses their relative importance in the mind of Cæsar.

EXERCISE LX

Grammar: A. 372; 573; 574. B. 256, 3; 300, 1. G. 208, 2; 452, 2; 467. H. 302, 6; 649, II.

Inflection: sūmō: turris.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually placed immediately before it.

CÆSAR SENDS FOR THE ROMAN SHIPS AND THE TWO FLEETS ENGAGE IN BATTLE

Complūribus expugnātis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī neque hostium fugam captīs oppidis reprimī¹ neque iīs² nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ducentae et trīgintā nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque qm̄nī genere armōrum ḥrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstītērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnī militū centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtæ, cōstābat³ quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvībus superābat, ut neque ex īferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa⁴ ā Gallis gravius acciderent.⁵

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 14

VOCABULARY

ōrnō, 1, <i>equip</i>	excitō, 1, <i>build up</i>
attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, <i>assign</i>	

NOTES

¹ reprimī: re + premō. ² iīs: dative with nocērī used impersonally.
³ cōstābat: impersonal. ⁴ missa: understand ea referring to tēla.
⁵ acciderent: fell.

EXERCISE LXI

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 542; 549. B. 191, 1; 288, 3; 286, 2. G. 356; 584; 586. H. 433, 3; 601, 4; 598.

Inflection: gerō; magis (compare).

Order of words: the beginning of the sentence is a place of emphasis.

HOW THE ROMANS HAVE THE ADVANTAGE IN THE FIGHT

Una erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta¹ ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īsertae² affixaēque³ longuriīs, nōn absimili⁴ fōrmā⁵ mūrāliū⁶ falcium. His cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praeerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs⁷ nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētūr. Reliquum erat certāmen posītūm⁸ in virtūtē, quā nostrī mīlītēs facile superābant, atque eō magis quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātūr, ut nūllum paulō fortius factū⁹ latērē posset¹⁰; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus¹¹ in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 14

VOCABULARY

falx, falcis, f., <i>hook</i>	comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, <i>seize</i>
praeacūtus, a, um, <i>sharpened to a point</i>	nāvium, nāvi'gī, n., <i>boat</i>
longurius, longu'rī, m., <i>long pole</i>	praeerumpō, 3. rūpī, <i>ruptus, break off</i>
antemna, ae, f., <i>sail-yard</i>	abscīdō, 3. cīdī, cīsus, <i>cut away</i>
mālus, ī, m., <i>mast</i>	concidō, 3. cīdī, —, <i>fall</i>
dēstinō, 1, <i>bind fast to</i>	armāmentum, ī, n., <i>tackle</i>
	ēripiō, 3. uī, <i>reptus, tear away</i>

NOTES

¹ praeparāta: composition? ² īsertae: participle. English derivative? ³ affixaē: participle. English derivative? ⁴ absimili: composition? The prefix has the force of a negative. ⁵ fōrmā: describes falcēs.

⁶ mūrālium: mūrus + ālis, *belonging to.* ⁷ Gallicis: Gallia + icus, English “-ic.” ⁸ erat positum: *defended.* ⁹ factum: participle of faciō, used as a noun. ¹⁰ posset: shows a result of quod . . . gerēbātur. ¹¹ dēspectus: cf. cōspectū above.

Many English words are derived from words in the passage. Make a list, and observe the relation in meaning between the Latin and the English word.

EXERCISE LXII

Grammar: A. 542; 549. B. 228, 3; 286, 2; 309, 3. G. 584; 586; 587. H. 601, 4; 598.

Inflection: reperiō; bīnī.

Order of words: numeral adjectives and adjectives of quantity usually precede the word which they limit.

A CALM PREVENTS THE FLIGHT OF THE ENEMY AND THE ROMANS ARE VICTORIOUS

Dēiectīs, ut diximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlītēs summā vī trānscedere in hostium nāvīs contendēbant. Quod¹ postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvībus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvībus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās² exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae³ ex omni numerō noctis interventū⁴ ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 15

VOCABULARY

antemna, ae, f., *sail-yard*

trānscedō, 3, scēndī, scēnsus,
climb over

malacia, ae, f., *calm*

existō, 3, stitī, —, *arise*
ūsque, *even*

NOTES

¹ *quod*: a relative. ² *tranquillitās*: English derivative? ³ *perpaucae*: the prefix is intensive. ⁴ *interventū*: *inter* + *veniō*.

By this battle the war with the Veneti is ended. Cæsar punishes the survivors severely that in the future the rights of ambassadors may be upheld.

EXERCISE LXIII

Grammar: A. 374, *a*; 500, *2*; 504. B. 189, *1*; 337, 8, *b*, *1*; 338, *1*, *a*. G. 355; 251, *1*; 428. H. 431; 621; 626.

Inflection: *nōlō*; *vōx*; *duo*.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually placed immediately before it.

SABINUS AMONG THE VENELLI. HE REFUSES TO FIGHT

Dum haec in Venetīs¹ geruntur,² Quintus Titūrius Sabīnus cum iis cōpiis quās ā Caesare accēperat in finīs Venellōrum pervēnit. His³ praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant,⁴ ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovicēs Lexoviīque, senātū suō interfectō quod auctōrēs⁵ bellī esse nōlēbant,⁶ portās⁷ clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaquaē praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs⁸ spēs praedandi studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cotidiānō labōre sēvocābat.⁹ Sabīnus idōneō¹⁰ omnibus rēbus¹¹ locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cōpiis pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contēmptiōnem¹² Sabīnus veniret sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil¹³ carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod¹⁴ cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praeſertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitātē aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandū¹⁵ nōn exīstīmābat. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 17

VOCABULARY

claudō, 3. sī, sus, <i>close</i>	cultūra, ae, f., <i>cultivation</i>
perditus, a, um, <i>desperate</i>	sēvocō, 1, <i>call away</i>
latrō, ūnis, m., <i>robber</i>	carpō, 3. carpsī, <i>carptus, criticize</i>

NOTES

¹ *Venetīs*: a seacoast tribe in Gaul. ² *geruntur*: dum meaning *while* is followed by the present tense. ³ *hīs*: for the case, consider *praeerat*. ⁴ *dēfēcerant*: *had revolted*. ⁵ *auctōrēs*: *augeō + tor*. English "author." ⁶ *nōlēbant*: states Cæsar's reason for *interfectō*, hence indicative. ⁷ *portās*: English derivative? ⁸ *quōs*: understand *īi* as antecedent. ⁹ *sēvocābat*: *sē + vocō*. *Vocō* = *appellō*. ¹⁰ *idōneō*: *fit*. ¹¹ *rēbus*: limits *idōneō*, answering the question "in what respect." ¹² *contemptiōnem*: English derivative? ¹³ *nōn nihil*: *somewhat*. ¹⁴ *quod*: causal. ¹⁵ *dīmican-dūm*: synonym of *pugnō*.

EXERCISE LXIV

Grammar: A. 367: 531, 2: 573: 574. B. 187, II, *a*; 282, 2: 300, 1. G. 346: 630; 452, 2: 467. H. 426, 1; 590: 649, II.

Inflection: *volō*; *homō*: *libenter* (compare).

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, follows the noun which it limits.

THE TRICK OF SABINUS TO GET THE ENEMY TO
ATTACK THE CAMP

Hāc¹ cōfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et **callidum** dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs quōs auxilī causā² sēcum³ habēbat. Huic⁴ magnīs praeiīs pollicitatiōnibusque⁵ persuādet utī ad hostis trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet.⁶ Quī ubi prō⁷ perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiis ipse Cæsar ā Venetis premātur⁸ docet, neque longius abesse⁹ quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus **clam** ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Cæsarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod¹⁰ ubi audītum est, conclāmant¹¹ omnēs **occāsiōnem** negōtiī¹² bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hoc cōsiliū

Gallōs hortābantur,—superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō,¹³ inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei **parum** diligenter ab iīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī belli, et quod¹⁴ ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adductī nōn prius¹⁵ Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab iīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā, laeti¹⁶ ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmētis virgultīsque collēctis, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra **pergunt**.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 18

VOCABULARY

*perfuga, ae, m., deserter
cunctātiō, ūnis, f., hesitation
cibāria, ūrum, n., provisions
libenter, willingly
crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, believe*

*laetus, a, um, glad
sarmētum, ī, n., brushwood
virgultum, ī, n., bush
colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, gather*

NOTES

¹ hāc: referring to the account in the preceding chapter. ² causā: for the sake of. ³ sēcum: i.e. Sabinus. ⁴ huic: for the case, consider persuādet. ⁵ pollicitātiōnibus: pollicitor + tiō. Pollicitor = policeor. ⁶ ēdocet: synonym of doceō. ⁷ prō: in the guise of. ⁸ premātur: is harassed. ⁹ abesse: depends on docet. ¹⁰ quod: the antecedent is the statement of the Gaul. ¹¹ conclāmant: compare English "exclamation." ¹² negōti: synonym of rēs. ¹³ cōfirmātiō: cōfirmō + tiō. This and the other nouns in the same case are appositives of rēs. ¹⁴ quod: conjunction. ¹⁵ prius: take with quam below. ¹⁶ laeti: translate as if an adverb.

Think of English words from dēlēgit, prōpōnit, proximā, hortābantur, superiōrum, prōvīsum, crēdunt, compleant, and observe how the meaning of the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English.

EXERCISE LXV

Grammar: A. 506; 568. B. 338, 3; 339, 2; 297, 1. G. 432, R.; 553, 3. H. 628; 571, 1.

Inflection: fīō; certior; noster.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word is usually placed first.

SABINUS ATTACKS THE ENEMY WHILE THEY ARE AT
A DISADVANTAGE AND DEFEATS THEM

Locus erat castrōrum ēdītus et paulātīm ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū¹ contendērunt, ut quam minimum² spati ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētūr, exanimātīque³ pervaenērunt. Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus⁴ signum dat. Impeditīs hostībus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptiōnē fierī iubet. Factum est⁵ opportūnitātē locī, hostiū īscientiā ac dēfatīgatiōne, virtūtē militū et superiōrum pugnārum exercitatiōne, ut nē pīmū quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent.⁶ Quōs integrīs vīribus militēs nostri cōsecūtī magnum numerū eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs⁷ cōnsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī⁸ pugnā Sabinus et dē Sabinī victoriā Caesar est certior factus,⁹ cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūrō dēdidērunt.¹⁰ Nam ut¹¹ ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās mēns¹² eōrum est. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 19

VOCABULARY

acclīvis, e, sloping up
colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, collect
īscientia, ae, f., ignorance

dēfatīgatiō, ūnis, f., exhaustion
integer, gra, grum, fresh

NOTES

¹ cursū: answers the question "how" about contendērunt. ² quam minimum: *the least possible.* ³ exanimātī: *out of breath.* ⁴ cupientibus: used substantively; translate by a demonstrative pronoun and a relative clause. ⁵ factum est: *it happened.* ⁶ verterent: think of the compounds āvertō and convertō. ⁷ equitēs: nominative. ⁸ nāvālī: *nāvis + ālis, pertaining to.* ⁹ est factus: has two subjects. ¹⁰ dēdidērunt: from the same stem is derived the noun dēditiō. ¹¹ ut: for the meaning, consider the mode of est. ¹² mēns: synonym of *animus.*

The tribes of Aquitania, in southwestern Gaul, revolt against Crassus, sent among them by Cæsar, and choose as leaders men who have had experience in Spain and know the Roman methods of warfare. After vigorous fighting the enemy's camp is taken and the revolt crushed.

EXERCISE LXVI

Grammar: A. 496; 540, 1. B. 337, 2, *a, f*; 286, 1. G. 664; 665; 666; 540. H. 638, I; 588, I.

Inflection: *cōficiō*; *opus*.

Order of words: the preposition regularly precedes the word which it governs.

THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII FROM THEIR FORESTS
AND SWAMPS ANNOY THE ROMANS

Eōdem ferē tempore¹ Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapii que supererant qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīssissent, arbitrātus² id bellum celeriter cōfici posse eō exercitū dūxit; qui longē³ aliā ratiōne ac⁴ reliquī Galli bellum gerere coēpērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentisque⁵ silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pērvenisset castraque mūnīre īstituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et, complūribus interfectis, longius impeditiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 28

VOCABULARY

exigō, 3. *ēgī*, *āctus*, *finišh*

umquam, *ever*

ēvolō, 1. *fly out*

dēperdō, 3. *didī*, *ditus*, *lose*

NOTES

¹ *tempore*: i.e. that of the events referred to in the last note of Exercise LXV. ² *arbitrātus*: synonym of *existimō*. ³ *longē*: with *aliā*.

⁴ *ac*: *than*. ⁵ *continentis*: *unbroken*.

Select several short phrases from the passage and determine the emphatic word in each phrase.

EXERCISE LXVII

Grammar: A. 345, *a*; 412; 546. B. 203; 220, 1; 288, 1. B. G. 365; 399; 585. H. 440, 3; 473, 3; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: *diēs*; *uterque*; *quis*.

Order of words: the words in a phrase, clause, or sentence are arranged in the order of the development of the thought in the writer's mind.

CÆSAR, HAVING CUT DOWN THE FORESTS, IS DEFEATED
BY CONTINUAL RAINSTORMS

Reliquis deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās **caedere** instituit, et, nē quis¹ inermibus imprudētibusque mīlitibus² ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam **māteriam** quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritātē³ magnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōflectō, cum iam **pecus** atque extrēma⁴ impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt **tempestātēs** cōnsecūtae utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne⁵ imbrium diūtius sub pellibus⁶ mīlītēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum⁷ redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs collocāvit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 29

VOCABULARY

deinceps, *in succession*

imber, *bris*, m., *rainstorm*

imprudēns, *imprudētis*, *off one's guard*

NOTES

¹ *quis*: with *impetus*. ² *mīlitibus*: dative. ³ *celeritātē*: answers the question "how" about *cōflectō*. ⁴ *extrēma*: *the rear of*. ⁵ *continuātiōne*: states a reason for *continērī nōn possent*. ⁶ *pellibus*: the material used as a covering for the tents. ⁷ *exercitum*: with *collocāvit* as well as with *redūxit*.

EXERCISE LXVIII

Grammar: A. 406; 415; 504. B. 217, 1; 224, 1; 338, 1, a. G. 398; 400; 428. H. 471; 473, 2; 626.

Inflection: maneō; domus; ille.

Order of words: in a phrase or sentence the emphatic word is likely to be placed first.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE SUEBI, WHO HAVE FORCED
SOME OF THE OTHER GERMAN TRIBES TO CROSS
THE RHINE

Eā quae secūta est **hieme**, quī fuit annus Gnaeō Pompēiō, Mārcō Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitudine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt nōn longē ā **marī**, quō Rhēnus influit.¹ Causa trānseundi fuit quod² ab Suēbīs complūris annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā³ prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannī singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī⁴ rūrsus invicem annō⁵ post in armīs sunt, illi domī remanent. Sic neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privātī ac sēparātī⁶ agrī⁷ apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem **lacte** atque **pecore** vivunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et **cibī** genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertātē vītiae, quod ā pueris nūllō officiō aut disciplinā⁸ assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīris⁹ alit et immānī corporum magnitudine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs¹⁰ frigidissimīs¹¹ neque vestītūs praeter pellis habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

VOCABULARY

exagitō, <i>i.</i> , <i>harass</i>	vēnātiō, <i>ōnis</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>hunting</i>
gēns, <i>gentis</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>tribe</i>	vīta, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>life</i> (<i>vitality</i>)
bellicōsus, <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>warlike</i>	assuēfaciō, <i>3</i> , <i>fēcī</i> , <i>factus</i> , <i>train</i>
quotannīs, <i>every year</i>	immānis, <i>e</i> , <i>huge</i>
alō, <i>3</i> , <i>uī</i> , <i>tus</i> , <i>support</i>	vestītus, <i>ūs</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>clothing</i>
invicem, <i>in turn</i>	exiguitās, <i>ātis</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>scantiness</i>
colō, <i>3</i> , <i>uī</i> , <i>cultus</i> , <i>till</i> , <i>cultivate</i>	apertus, <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>uncovered</i>
vīvō, <i>3</i> , <i>vīxī</i> , <i>vīctum</i> , <i>live</i>	lavō, <i>i</i> , <i>lāvī</i> , <i>lautus</i> , <i>bathe</i> (lav-

NOTES

¹ *influit*: composition? ² *quod*: conjunction. ³ *cultūrā*: English derivative? ⁴ *hī*: i.e. *reliquī*. ⁵ *annō*: expresses degree of difference with *post*. ⁶ *sēparātī*: English derivative? ⁷ *agrī*: take with *nihil*. ⁸ *disciplinā*: English derivative? ⁹ *vīris*: from *vis*. ¹⁰ *locīs*: ablative absolute expressing concession. ¹¹ *frigidissimīs*: English derivative?

EXERCISE LXIX

Grammar: A. 345; 373; 410; 416. B. 203, 5; 190; 218, 1; 225. G. 365; 366; 349; 407; 404. H. 440, 3; 447; 430; 477, I; 478, 1.
Inflection: dēsiliō; vēstīgīum.

Order of words: the limiting word is likely to precede the word which it limits.

THE SCORN OF THE SUEBI FOR THE CUSTOMS AND
PRODUCTS OF FOREIGNERS

Mercātōribus¹ est aditus magis eō, ut quae² bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō³ ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent.⁴ Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs⁵ nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotidiānā exercitatiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur,⁶ equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt;

neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur⁷ quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum⁸ equitum quamvis paucī adire audent. Vinum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.⁹ — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 2

VOCABULARY

iūmentum, ī, n., <i>beast of burden</i>	iners, inertis, <i>unskillful</i>
dēlectō, 1. <i>delight</i>	ephippium, ephippī, n., <i>saddle cloth</i>
impēnsus, a, um, <i>excessive, high</i>	vīnum, ī, n., <i>wine</i>
dēfōrmis, e, <i>misshapen</i>	remollēscō, 3, ——, ——, <i>lose strength</i>
assuēfaciō, 3. fēcī, <i>factus, train</i>	effēminō, 1, <i>make womanish</i>
turpis, e, <i>disgraceful</i>	

NOTES

¹ mercātōribus: dative showing the possessor. ² quae: understand ea, object of vēndant, as antecedent. ³ quō: because. ⁴ dēsiderent: synonym of cupiō. ⁵ importātis: with iūmentis. ⁶ proeliantur: from proelium. ⁷ habētur: is considered. ⁸ ephippiātōrum: ephippium + ātus, provided with. ⁹ arbitrantur: synonym of existimō.

The Usipetes and the Tenceri, German tribes, forced by the Suebi, cross the Rhine and invade the territory of the Menapii in the extreme northern part of Gaul. They conquer these and seize their towns and property.



VEXILLUM

EXERCISE LXX

Grammar: A. 343. *b*; 354. *b*; 573. B. 198, 3; 209, 1; 300, 1, N. G. 366; 377; 452, 2. H. 447; 457; 649, 11.

Inflection: paenitet; certior.

Order of words: demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns usually precede the words which they modify.

CÆSAR FEARS THE FICKLENESSEN AND CREDULITY OF
THE GAULS

His dē rēbus¹ Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem² Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum³ exīstīmāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis,⁴ utī et viātōrēs⁵ etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidis vulgus circumsistat,⁶ quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus⁷ permōti dē summīs saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertī rūmōribus serviant, et plēriquē ad voluntātem eōrum facta respondeant. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 5

VOCABULARY

mōbilis, e, changeable servīō, 4. īvī, ītūm, be a slave, serve
necesse (indeclinable), necessary

NOTES

¹ **hīs rēbus:** i. e. the advance of the Usipetes and the Tencteri. ² **infir-**
mitātem: in + firmus + tās. ³ **committendum:** understand esse. ⁴ **cō-**
suētūdinis: predicate genitive. ⁵ **viātōrēs:** via + tor. ⁶ **circumsistat:**
for the mood, compare cōgant. ⁷ **audiōnibus:** audiō + tiō; reports.

Cæsar demands that the Germans leave Gaul, but they say that they cannot endure the Suebi. He then proposes that they settle among the Ubii, just on the other side of the Rhine. The Germans ask that Cæsar remain where he is while this proposal is being considered, but Cæsar thinks this is a ruse to gain time.

EXERCISE LXXI

Grammar: A. 393, *a*; 406. B. 177, 1, 3; 217, 1. G. 340, *b*, R. 1; 398. H. 410, 1; 471.

Inflection: *orior*; *avis*.

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the word which it limits.

THE COURSE OF THE MEUSE AND THE RHINE

Mosa prōfluit¹ ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus,² īsūlam efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde³ mīlibus passuum octōgintā in Āceanū īfluit.⁴ Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpīs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finīs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediōmaticum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus⁵ fertur, et ubi Āceanō appropinquāvit⁶ in plūris diffliuit⁷ partīs multīs ingentibusque īsulis effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque īvīs avīum vivere existimantur), multīsque capitibus in Āceanū īfluit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 10

VOCABULARY

citātus, a, um, *swif*t
ingēns, ingentis, *huge*
piscis, is, m., *fish*

īvum, ī, n., *egg*
vīvō, 3, vīxi, vīctum, *live*

NOTES

¹ prōfluit: composition? ² Vacalus: predicate nominative. ³ inde: i.e. ab īsulā. ⁴ īfluit: composition? ⁵ citātus: give it the force of an adverb. ⁶ appropinquāvit: the root is found in the adverb prope. ⁷ diffliuit: composition?

EXERCISE LXXII

Grammar: A. 504, *a*; 506; 563. B. 338, 1, *a*, 5; 339, 2; 295, 1. G. 428; 432; 546. H. 626; 628; 565.

Inflection: revertor; iūs; ipse.

Order of words: commonly temporal clauses precede, and purpose clauses follow, the verb on which they depend.

THE GERMANS ASK CÆSAR NOT TO ADVANCE AND NOT
TO FIGHT FOR A FEW DAYS

Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duodecim mīlibus abesset, ut¹ erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur² ūrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret cōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret³ in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum⁴ sī pīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, cā condīcōne quae ā Caesare ferrētūr⁵ sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.⁶ Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur,⁷ ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam⁸ frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs⁹ cognōsceret. Interim ad pīfectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostīs proeliō lacesserent, et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent **quoad** ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 11

VOCABULARY

antecēdō, 3, cessī, cессum, <i>go ahead</i>	frequēns, frequentis, <i>in large numbers</i>
aquātiō, ūnis, f., <i>getting water</i>	

NOTES

¹ *ut: as.* ² *prōgrederētur:* the root of this word is found in *gradus, step.*

³ *potestātem faceret:* *give an opportunity.* ⁴ *quōrum:* the antecedent is *Ubiōs.* Cæsar's proposal was that the Germans should settle in this tribe's

territory. ⁵ **ferrētur**: was proposed. ⁶ **daret**: in the words of the Germans this was an imperative. ⁷ **arbitrābātur**: synonym of **exīstīmō**. ⁸ **quam**: possible. ⁹ **postulātīs**: participle of **postulō** used as a noun.

EXERCISE LXXIII

Grammar: A. 370; 382; 403, *a.* B. 187, III: 191, 1; 215. G. 347; 356; 395. H. 429; 433; 467; 469, 2.

Inflection: *cadō*; *frāter*; *timēns*.

Order of words: the possessive adjectives, unless emphatic, follow the noun which they modify.

IN A CAVALRY SKIRMISH WITH THE ENEMY THE ROMANS LOSE SEVERAL MEN

At hostēs, ubi prīmū nostrōs equitēs cōnspēxērunt,¹ quōrum erat quīnque mīliū numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī qui frūmentandi causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timētibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī cōrūm paulō² ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistētibus cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectis reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius³ fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et **septuāgintā**, in hīs vir fortissimus Pisō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere⁴ nātus, cuius avus in cīvitātē suā rēgnū obtinuerat amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxiliū ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus **quoad** potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitatō equō sē hostibus obtulit⁵ atque interfectus est.

VOCABULARY

octingentī, ae, a, *eight hundred*avus, ī, m., *grandfather*frūmentor, ī, *forage*ēripiō, 3, uī, *reptus, rescue*indūtiae, ārum, f., *truce*procul, *from a distance*suffodiō, 3, fōdī, *fossus, stab from below*

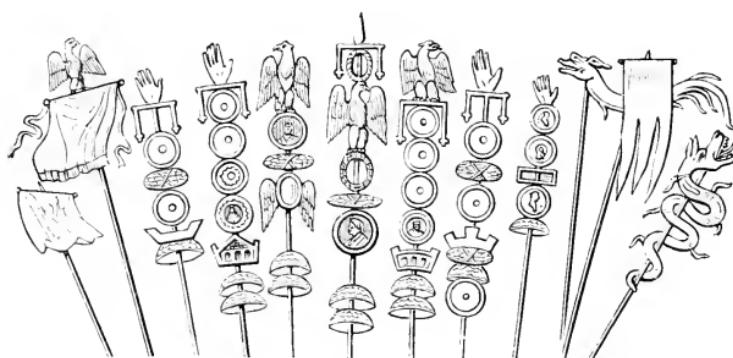
NOTES

¹ cōspexērunt: compare with dēspiciō and cōspectus. ² paulō: synonym of parvō. ³ prius: take with quam following. ⁴ genere: *lineage*.

⁵ obtulit: ob + ferō. English derivative?

The passage contains many words from which English words are derived. Make a list.

Cæsar distrusts the Gauls, and when after the battle their representatives come to him to make excuses, he has them arrested, and at once sets out with the army for their camp. Before they know what is going on, he storms their camp and inflicts on them fearful punishment. Because of the trouble which the Germans keep causing him, Cæsar determines to cross the Rhine and attack them.



SIGNA MILITARIA

EXERCISE LXXIV

Grammar: A. 343, *b*; 374, *a*; 414, *a*. B. 198, 3; 189, 1; 223. G. 366; 355; 403. H. 447; 431; 479, 1.

Inflection: dēfīgō; aqua; bīnī.

Order of words: in a phrase or sentence the emphatic word is commonly placed first.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE BRIDGE THAT CÆSAR BUILT
ACROSS THE RHINE

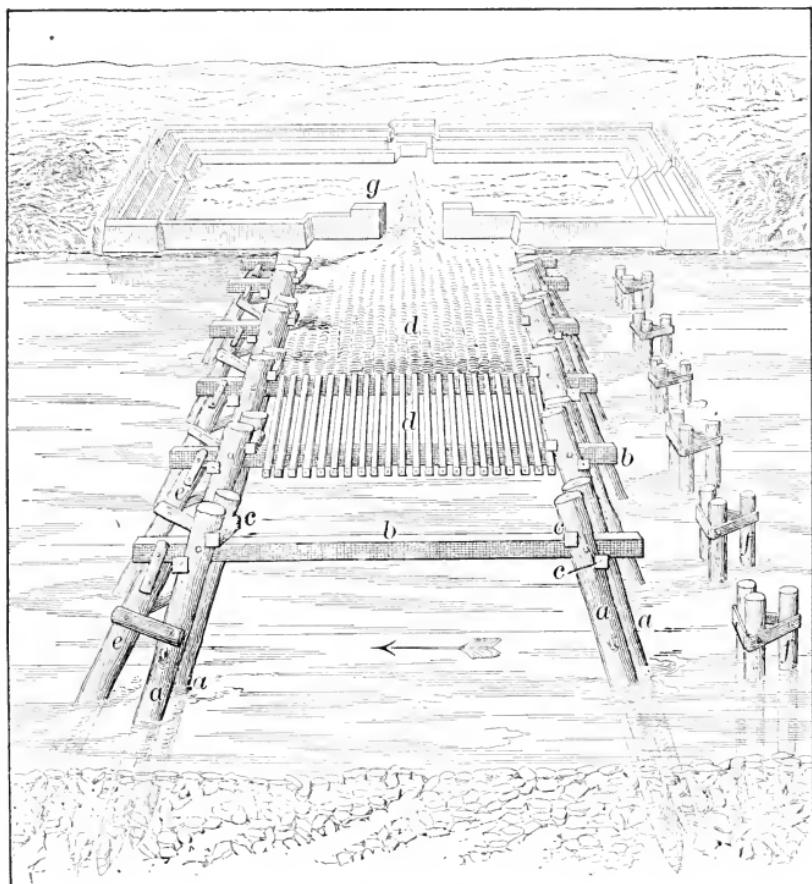
Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre¹ neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis² esse³ statuēbat.



GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR

Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem,⁴ altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimāvit. Ratiōnem pontis hanc īstituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia⁵ paulum ab īmō⁶ praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervallō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublīcae modō⁷ dērēctē ad perpendiculum,⁸ sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum⁹

nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, iīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta, intervallō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īferiōre parte¹⁰ contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īsuper bipedālibus¹¹ trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum



PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia ; bb, trabes bipedales ; cc, fibulæ ;
 dd, derecta materia longuriis cratibusque constrata ;
 ee, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae ;
 ff, sublicae supra pontem immissae ;
 g, castellum ad caput pontis positum.

tignōrum iunctūra¹² distābat, bīnīs utrimque fibulis ab extrēmā
 parte distinēbantur¹³ ; quibus disclūsis atque in contrāriam partem
 revinctis¹⁴ tanta erat operis firmitudō¹⁵ atque ea¹⁶ rērum nātūra ut,
 quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius illigāta tenērentur.
 Haec dērēctā māteriā inectā contexēbantur ac longuriis cratibusque

cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē¹⁷ agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūcta vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēcīendi operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, his dēfēnsōribus¹⁸ eārum rērum vīs minuerētur neu pontī **nocērent**. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 17

VOCABULARY

commemorō, <i>i</i> , <i>mention</i>	īnsuper, <i>above</i>
dēcernō, <i>3</i> , crēvī, crētus, <i>decide</i>	fibula, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>brace</i>
tūtus, <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>safe</i>	disclūdō, <i>3</i> , clūsī, clūsus, <i>hold apart</i>
tignum, <i>ī</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>timber</i>	artē, <i>closely</i>
praeacūtus, <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>sharpened to a point</i>	illigō, <i>i</i> , <i>bind</i>
dīmētior, <i>4</i> , mēnsus, <i>measure off</i>	contexō, <i>3</i> , uī, <i>tus</i> , <i>join together</i>
māchinātiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i> , <i>mechanical contrivance</i>	longurius, longu'ri, <i>m.</i> , <i>long pole</i>
fistūca, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>pile driver</i>	crātēs, ium, <i>f.</i> , <i>wicker work</i>
sublica, <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>pile</i>	cōsternō, <i>3</i> , strāvī, strātus, <i>spread over</i>
dērēctus, <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>straight</i>	sētius, <i>less</i>
fastigātē, <i>sloping</i>	ariēs, ietis, <i>m.</i> , <i>prop</i>
quadrāgēnī, <i>ae</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>forty each</i>	mediocris, <i>e</i> , <i>moderate</i>
	truncus, <i>ī</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>trunk</i>

NOTES

¹ trānsire: substantive infinitive, subject of esse. ² dignitātis: English derivative? This is a genitive of possession. ³ esse: *belong*. ⁴ rapiditātem: English derivative? ⁵ sēsquipedālia: sēsqui, *one half more*, + pēs + ālis, *pertaining to*. ⁶ īmō: *end*. ⁷ modō: *after the manner*. ⁸ perpendiculum: English derivative? ⁹ secundum: *according to*. ¹⁰ ab īferiōre parte: *below the bridge*. ¹¹ bipedālibus: *bi*, *two*. Compare sēsquipedālibus. ¹² iūnctūra: iungō + tūra. ¹³ distinēbantur: dis + teneō. ¹⁴ revinctis: *fastened back*. ¹⁵ firmitūdō: *composition?* ¹⁶ ea: *such*. ¹⁷ obliquē: English derivative? ¹⁸ dēfēnsōribus: dēfendō + tor.

Cæsar leads his army across and devastates the territory. He promises the Ubii his help if the Suebi trouble them. He learns that the Suebi have retreated. So having accomplished his purpose, he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge. He then determines to visit Britain because from there help is sent regularly to the enemies of the Romans in Gaul.

EXERCISE LXXV

Grammar: A. 496; 506. B. 337, 2. *a, f;* 338, 3. G. 665; 666; 432, R. H. 638, 1; 628.

Inflection: *nāvigō*; *portus*; *plānus*.

Order of words: the first word in a sentence often refers to something mentioned in the preceding sentence. For this reason a sentence often begins with a relative or demonstrative pronoun.

CÆSAR SAILS TO INVADE BRITAIN AND SEEKS A PLACE
TO DISEMBARK

His cōstitūtis rēbus¹ nactus² idōneam ad **nāvigandum tempes-tātem** tertīā ferē vigiliā solvit,³ equitēsque in ulteriōrem **portum**⁴ prōgredi⁵ et nāvīs **cōnsendere** et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius⁶ esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum p̄mīs nāvībus Britanniam attigit⁷ atque ibi in omnībus collībus expositās hostiū cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec⁸ erat nātūra, atque ita montībus⁹ angustē¹⁰ **mare** continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in **lītus** tēlum adīgi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō con-venīrent, ad hōram nōnam in **ancorīs** exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnisque mīlitūm convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō¹¹ cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut¹² rēi militārīs ratiō, maximē ut¹² maritīmā rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īstabilem **mōtum** habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur.¹³ His dīmissīs et **ventum** et **aestum** ūnō tem-pore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passūm **septem** ab eō locā prōgressus apertō ac **plānō** lītore nāvīs cōnstituit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 23

VOCABULARY

solvō, 3, *solvī*, *solutus*, *set sail*
expōnō, 3, *posuī*, *positus*, *array*
adigō, 3, *ēgī*, *āctus*, *drive, hurl*

nēquāquam, *by no means*
īstabilis, *e*, *unsteady*

NOTES

¹ hīs rēbus: i. e. preparations for the voyage. ² nactus: *having met with*.
³ solvit: probably from Portus Itius, which is perhaps the modern Boulogne, though some authorities identify it with Wissant, a town about ten miles from Calais. ⁴ portum: perhaps the harbor of Ambleteuse. ⁵ prōgreḍī: compare with ēgredior, noting the prefix. ⁶ tardius: adverb. English derivative? ⁷ Britanniam attigit: somewhere near Dover. ⁸ haec: such. ⁹ montibus: *cliffs*. ¹⁰ angustē: *closely*. ¹¹ Volusēnō: Cæsar had sent him ahead to find out what he could, but he had not dared to land. ¹² ut, maximē ut: *as, especially as*. ¹³ administrārentur: states the purpose of monuit.

EXERCISE LXXVI

Grammar: A. 349, *a*; 374, *a*; 410. B. 204, *i*; 189, *i*; 218, *i*.
 G. 374; 355; 407. H. 450; 451, *i*; 431; 477.

Inflection: ūtor; aqua; audācter.

Order of words: a prepositional phrase usually precedes the word which it limits.

THE OBSTACLES WHICH THE ROMANS FACE IN TRYING
TO LAND

At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis,¹ quō plērumque² genere in proeliis ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpīis subsecūtī³ nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi⁴ in altō cōnstituī⁵ nōn poterant, militibus⁶ autem ignōtis locīs, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravi onere armōrum pressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illī⁷ aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostri perterriti atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperitī nōn eādem alacritātē ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis cōnsuērant ūtēbantur. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 24

VOCABULARY

essedārius, essedārī, m.,	īnsuēfactus, a, um, <i>trained</i>
<i>charioteer</i>	imperītus, a, um, <i>unskilled</i>
membrum, ī, n., <i>limb</i>	alacritās, ātis, f., <i>eagerness</i>

NOTES

¹ essedāriīs: understand *praemissis*. ² plērumque: synonym of *maximē*.
³ subsecūtī: *sub*, *closely*. ⁴ nisi: *except*. ⁵ cōnstituī: *be moored*.
⁶ militib⁹: with *dēsiliendum*, etc. ⁷ illī: *i.e.* *barbari*.

Think of English words from *genere*, *prohibēbant*, *manibus*, *gravī*, *onere*, *flūctibus*, *alacritātē*, and observe how the meaning of each is related to that of the Latin word.

EXERCISE LXXVII

Grammar: A, 382, 1; 384; 563, a. B. 191, 2, a; 192, 1; 295, 1, a.
 G. 356, R. 3; 359; 423, 2. N. 6. H. 433; 434, 2; 565, 3.

Inflection: cunctor; mare; expeditior.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually placed immediately before it.

CÆSAR, IN FORCING BACK THE ENEMY, IS HELPED BY
 THE BRAVE ACT OF A ROMAN SOLDIER

Quod¹ ubi Caesar animadvertisit, nāvīs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitatior et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī² ab onerāriīs nāvībus et rēmīs incitārī et ad³ latus apertum hostium cōnstituī,⁴ atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostis prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā⁵ et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitatō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.⁶ Atque nostrīs militib⁹ cunctantib⁹, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, qui⁷ decimae legiōnis aquilam⁸ ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit,⁹ "commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praeſtiterō." Hoc cum vōce magnā

dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostis aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur ūniversī¹⁰ ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

DE BELLO GALICO, IV, 25

VOCABULARY

inūsitatūs, a, um, <i>unusual</i>	deus, ī, m., <i>god</i>
funda, ae, f., <i>sling</i>	fēlīciter, <i>happily</i>
tormentum, ī, n., <i>military engine</i>	commīlōtō, ūnis, m., <i>fellow soldier</i>
prōpellō, 3, pulī, pulsus, <i>force back</i>	prōdō, 3, didī, ditus, <i>betray</i>
submoveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus, <i>drive off</i>	meus, a, um, <i>my, mine</i>
obtestor, 1, <i>appeal to</i>	admittō, 3, mīsī, missus, <i>permit</i>

NOTES

¹ quod: i.e. the difficulty of landing. ² removērī: depends on iussit.
³ ad: off. ⁴ cōnstituī: to be moored. ⁵ figūrā: states a cause of permōtī. English derivative? ⁶ pedem rettulērunt: *fell back*. ⁷ quī: the antecedent is the subject of inquit below. ⁸ aquilam: the standard of the legion. ⁹ inquit: synonym of dicō. ¹⁰ ūniversī: adjective. English derivative?

EXERCISE LXXVIII

Grammar: A. 315, c; 370. B. 253, 2; 187, III. G. 319; 347. H. 516, 1; 429.

Inflection: possum: lītus; alius.

Order of words: prepositions regularly precede the words which they govern.

AFTER A SHARP FIGHT C.ÆSAR MAKES A LANDING AND ROUTS THE ENEMY

Pugnātum est¹ ab utrisque āriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ūrordinēs servāre neque firmiter īsistere² neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs

omnibus vadis, ubi ex **litore**³ aliquōs singulāris ex nāvī ēgredientīs cōspexerant, incitātis equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant,⁴ aliī ab⁵ latere apertō in ūniversōs⁶ tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvīgia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs⁷ labōrantīs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostri simul in **āridō** cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque **īsulam** capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesari dēfuit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 26

VOCABULARY

servō, **i**, *keep*

scapha, **ae**, **f.**, *skiff*

aggregō, **i**, *attach* (lit. *crowd to*)

speculātōrius, **a**, **um**, *spy*

singulāris, **e**, *one by one*

nāvigium, **nāvi'gī**, **n.**, *boat*

NOTES

¹ **pugnātum est**: translate by a personal form. ² **īnsistere**: synonym of **cōsistō**. ³ **ex litorē**: with **cōspexerant**. ⁴ **circumsistēbant**: compare with **īnsistō** and **cōsistō**. ⁵ **ab**: *on*. ⁶ **ūniversōs**: *the main body*.
⁷ **quōs**: the antecedent is **hīs**.

Think of English words from **aggregābat**, **cōspexerant**, **incitātis**, **latere**, **apertō**, **subsidia**, **āridō**, **īsulam**, and observe the connection in meaning between the Latin word and the English derivative.

The Britons ask for peace after the first battle, but again renew hostilities. Cæsar defeats them, but a storm and the tide damage his fleet, and, after receiving offers of peace once more, he returns to Gaul.

EXERCISE LXXIX

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 500, 4; 531, 2. B. 191, 1; 337, 8, b, 2; 382, 2. G. 356; 430; 630. H. 433; 622; 590.

Inflection: **reficiō**; **aestus**; **humilior**.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the noun which it limits.

CÆSAR GIVES ORDERS FOR THE BUILDING OF A FLEET,
AND THEN SETTLES A QUESTION OF DAMAGES WITH
THE PIRUSTÆ

Lūciō Domitiō, Appiō Claudiō cōnsulibus discēdēns ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praeſecerat, uti quam plūrimās possint **hieme** nāvīs aedificandās¹ veterēsque **reficiendās** cūrent. Eārum modum fōrmamque² dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit **humiliōrēs** quam quibus³ in nostrō **marī** uti cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō⁴ magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtatiōnēs **aestuum** minus magnōs ibi **fluctūs** fieri⁵ cognōverat; ad onera ac multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs utimur maribus. Hās omnīs āctuāriās imperat fieri, quam ad rem multum humilitās⁶ adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvīs ex Hispāniā apportāri⁷ iubet. Ipse conventibus⁸ Galliae citeriōris **perāctīs** in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pirustīs finitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus militēs imperat⁹ certumque in locum convenire iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pirustae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā¹⁰ ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitātēs dat, quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 1

VOCABULARY

quotannīs, <i>every year</i>	satisfaciō, 3, fēcī, factus, <i>give</i>
onerō, 1, <i>load</i>	satisfaction
subductiō, ūnis, f., <i>beaching</i>	arbiter, trī, m., <i>referee</i>
iūmentum, ī, n., <i>beast of burden</i>	līs, lītis, f., <i>damages</i>
āctuārius, a, um, <i>swifl</i>	aestimō, 1, <i>assess</i>
incursiō, ūnis, f., <i>rajd</i>	poena, ae, f., <i>penalty</i>

NOTES

¹ nāvīs aedificandās: Cæsar intended to make a second expedition to Britain. ² fōrmam: English derivative? ³ quibus: understand eās as antecedent. ⁴ eō: *for this reason.* ⁵ fierī: *become.* ⁶ humilitās: derivation? ⁷ apportārī: *ad + portō.* ⁸ conventibus: the courts of justice over which the provincial governor presided. ⁹ imperat: *levies.* ¹⁰ perceptā: synonym of cognōscō.

Think of English words from aedificandās, onera, conventibus, doceant, arbitrōs, aestiment, and observe how the meaning of the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English.

Six hundred ships of the kind described above and twenty-eight war vessels are built for Cæsar. He orders them to assemble at Portus Itius, ready for the passage to Britain. He himself with four legions and eight hundred horsemen invades the land of the Treveri, who have disregarded his commands.

EXERCISE LXXX

Grammar: A. 418; 564; 580. B. 226; 296, 2; 314, 1. G. 397; 550, 1, 2; 650. H. 480; 567, 1; 642; 643.

Inflection: ostendō; fidēs; alter.

Order of words: the following arrangement of the modifiers of a verb is common: ablative, indirect object, direct object, adverb, unless changed by emphasis.

HOW THE TWO CHIEFS OF THE TREVERI ACTED ON
CÆSAR'S ARRIVAL IN THEIR TERRITORY

Haec cīvitās¹ longē plūrimum² tōtius Galliae equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitātē duo dē pīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cingetorīx; ex quibus alter, simul atque³ dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cognitum est, ad eum⁴ vēnit, sē suōsque omnīs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amicitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit, quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur ostendit. At⁵ Indūtiomārus equitātūm peditātūmque cōgere, iīsque quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam⁶

abditis, quae ingentī magnitūdine⁷ per mediōs finīs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īstituit; sed posteāquam⁸ nōn nullī pīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et auctōritāte Cingetorigis adductī et adventū nostri exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs privātīs rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere⁹ nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit¹⁰: Sēsē idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quō¹¹ facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur; itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse, sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās cīvitātisque fortūnās eius fideī permīssūrum. — DE BELLO GALICO, V, 3

VOCABULARY

tangō, 3. tetigī, tāctus, *touch*
 pīncipātūs, ūs, m., *leadership*
 aetās, ātis, f., *age*
 ingēns, ingentis, *huge*

idcircō, *for this reason*
 plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people*
 lābor, 3, lāpsus, *go wrong*

NOTES

¹ cīvitās: i. e. that of the Trēverī. ² plūrimum: with valet; *is the strongest*.
³ simul atque: *as soon as*. ⁴ eum: Caesar. ⁵ at: synonym of sed.
⁶ Arduennam: *of Arlennes*. ⁷ magnitūdine: describes quae. ⁸ posteāquam: = postquam. ⁹ cōnsulere: with dative, *look out for*. ¹⁰ mittit: the subject refers to Indūtiomārus. ¹¹ quō: introduces a purpose clause containing a comparative.

Explain the derivation of adventū, amīcitiā, magnitūdine, imprūdentiam.

Cæsar arranges matters with the leaders of the Treveri and goes to Portus Itius, where he finds the fleet ready for him, with the exception of sixty ships that have been held back by a storm. The chief men of all the states have also assembled there, and most of these he decides to take with him as hostages, fearing an uprising in Gaul while he is away.

EXERCISE LXXXI

Grammar: A. 345; 349, *a*; 504, *b*. B. 203, 1; 204, 1; 338, 1, *a*, *c*. G. 365; 374; 428, 2. H. 440, 3; 451, 1; 475, 2; 626.

Inflection: *audeō*; *commūnis*; *ille*.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity, being emphatic, usually precede the word which they modify.

DUMNORIX IS RELUCTANT TO ACCOMPANY CÆSAR TO BRITAIN

Erat ūnā cum cēteris¹ Dumnorix Aeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbis dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in pīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc² quod³ in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnūm cīvītātīs dēferrī; quod dictum⁴ Aeduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandi aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cognōverat. Ille omnibus pīmō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim⁵ quod īnsuētūs nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteāquam⁶ id obstinātē⁷ sibi negārī vidit, omnī spē impetrāndī adēmptā pīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortāriquē coepit utī in continentī remanērent; metū territārē⁸: Nōn sine causā fieri ut Gallia omnī nōbilitātē spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut quōs⁹ in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnīs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret¹⁰; fidem reliquīs interpōnere,¹¹ iūs iūrandū poscere, ut quod esse ex ūsū¹² Galliae intellēxissent commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 6

VOCABULARY

dēprecōr, 1, *beg off*

sollicitō, 1, *stir up*

īnsuētūs, a, um, *unaccustomed*

sēvocō, 1, *call aside*

religiō, ònis, f., *scrupule*

territō, 1, *terrify*

negō, 1, *refuse*

spoliō, 1, *plunder*

NOTES

¹ ceteris: synonym of reliqui, referring to those who were going with Cæsar. ² huc: to this. ³ quod: the fact that. ⁴ dictum: a noun, referring to sibi . . . dēferri. ⁵ partim: adverb from pars. ⁶ posteā-quam: = postquam. ⁷ obstinatē: observe the termination. English derivative? ⁸ territare: depends on coepit. It implies an idea of *saying*, on which fieri and esse depend. ⁹ quōs: the antecedent is hōs. ¹⁰ necāret: synonym of interficiō. ¹¹ interpōnere: to pledge. It depends on coepit. ¹² ex ūsū: of advantage.

Observe the force of the prefix in *dēferri*, *insuētus*, *sēvocāre*, *interpōnere*.

EXERCISE LXXXII

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3: 367: 496. B. 187. II, a: 201, 2: 337, 2, a, f. G. 369: 346: 665; 666. H. 442; 426, 1: 638, 1.

Inflection: coepī: cōnsilium; liber.

Order of words: the modifiers of a word precede or follow it, according as they are, or are not, emphatic.

DURING THE EMBARKATION DUMNORIX ATTEMPTS TO
ESCAPE, BUT IS OVERTAKEN AND PUT TO DEATH

Quā rē¹ cognitā Cæsar, quod tantum cīvitātī Aeduāe dignitātis² tribuēbat, coercendum³ atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius eius āmentiam prō-gredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid⁴ sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter vīgintī quīnque in eō locō commorātūs,⁵ quod Cōrus⁶ ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam⁷ ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōseret; tandem idōneam nactus⁸ tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvīs iubet. At omnium impeditis animīs Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs īsciente⁹ Cæsare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Cæsar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, magnam partem equitātūs ad eum īsequendum mittit retrahique imperat; sī vim faciat neque

pāreat, interficiā iubet, nihil¹⁰ hunc sē absente prō¹¹ sānō factūrum arbitrātus,¹² quī¹³ praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 7

VOCABULARY

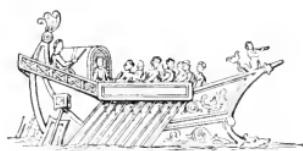
tribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, <i>grant</i>	retrahō, 3, trāxī, trāctus, <i>bring</i> <i>back</i>
coerceō, 2, uī, itus, <i>check</i>	pāreō, 2, uī, —, <i>obey</i>
āmentia, ae, f., <i>madness</i>	sānus, a, um, <i>sane</i>
prōspiciō, 3, spexī, <i>spectus, look out</i>	revocō, 1, <i>recall</i>
flō, 1, <i>blow</i>	clāmitō, 1, <i>shout</i>
sētius, <i>less</i>	

NOTES

¹ quā rē: the facts mentioned in the last chapter. ² dignitātis: with tantum. English derivative? ³ coercendum: understand esse, depending on statuēbat. ⁴ quid: *in any way*. ⁵ commorātus: synonym of moror. ⁶ Cōrus: the northwest wind. ⁷ dabat operam: *he exerted himself*. ⁸ nac-tus: *having met*. ⁹ insciēte: *in + sciēns*. ¹⁰ nihil: *object*. ¹¹ prō: *like*. ¹² arbitrātus: synonym of exīstīmō. ¹³ quī: equivalent to *cum causal*.

Think of English words from tribuēbat, dēterrendum, prōspiciendum, revocātus, revertuntur, and observe the connection in meaning between the Latin word and the English derivative.

Cæsar sets sail at sunset and with the enthusiastic help of sailors and soldiers reaches Britain the next day about noon. He lands without mishap. Learning the location of the enemy, he sets out at once for them, but has no decisive engagement.



NAVIGIUM

EXERCISE LXXXIII

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3: 531, 2: 540, 2. B. 201, 2: 282, 2; 286, 1. G. 369; 630; 541. H. 442; 590: 588, II.

Inflection: nūntiō: diēs: superus (compare).

Order of words: temporal clauses usually precede, clauses of purpose and result usually follow, the verb on which they depend.

A STORM CAUSES A DISASTER TO THE FLEET

Postridiē eius diēi¹ māne tripartitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem² misit, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur.³ His aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Quintō Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte maximā coortā tempestāte prope omnīs nāvīs afflīctās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis pati possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum⁴ acceptum.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 10

VOCABULARY

māne, *early*

prōspectus, ūs, m., *view*

tripartitō, *in three divisions*

ēiciō, 3. iēcī, iectus, *throw out*

aliquantum, ī, n., *a little*

NOTES

¹ eius diēi: i.e. on which his soldiers had put the enemy to flight.

² expeditiōnem: expediō + tiō; *raid*. ³ persequerentur: composition?

⁴ incommodum: the prefix has a negative force.

EXERCISE LXXXIV

Grammar: A. 345; 382, 1; 504. B. 203, 1; 191, 1; 338, 1, a. G. 365; 356; 428. H. 440, 3; 433: 626.

Inflection: mūniō; maior; īdem.

Order of words: modifiers of either word of an ablative absolute often are placed between these words, the particular arrangement depending on the emphasis.

CÆSAR PROCURES WORKMEN, REPAIRS THE DAMAGE,
AND STARTS AGAIN

Hīs rēbus¹ cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvīs revertitur; eadem ferē² quae ex nūntiis litterisque cognōverat cōram perspīcīt,³ sīc ut āmissīs circiter quadrāgintā nāvībus reliquae tamen refīcī posse magnō negōtiō⁴ vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnībus fabrōs dēlīgit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit⁵ ut⁶ quam plūrimās possit iīs legiōnībus quae sint apud eum nāvīs īstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operaē⁷ ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnīs nāvīs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī.⁸ In hīs rēbus circiter diēs decem cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs⁹ quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvībus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praeſidiō nāvībus relinquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiāe Britānōrum convēnerant summā¹⁰ imperī bellīque administrāndī commūnī cōſiliō permīssā Cassivellaunō, cuius finīs ā marītīmī¹¹ cīvitātībus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātūr Tāmēsīs,¹² ā marī circiter mīlia passuum octōgintā. Huic¹³ superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātībus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britānī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praeſēcerant. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 11

VOCABULARY

revocō, 1, *recall*

faber, bri, m., *workman*

NOTES

¹ *hīs rēbus*: i.e. the disaster to the fleet. ² *ferē*: an adverb is usually placed next to the word which it modifies. ³ *perspicit*: compare with *dēspiciō* and *cōspiciō*. ⁴ *negōtiō*: shows the manner of *refici*. ⁵ *scribit*: implies an order. ⁶ *ut*: introduces *īstituāt*. ⁷ *operae*: = *difficultās*. ⁸ *omnīs . . . coniungī*: forms the subject of *esse*. ⁹ *nocturnīs*: *nox* + *urnus*, *pertaining to*. ¹⁰ *summā*: a noun. ¹¹ *maritimīs*: *mare* + *timus*, *pertaining to*. ¹² *Tamesis*: *the Thames*. ¹³ *huic*: i.e. Cassivellaunus, one of the great heroes of ancient Britain.

EXERCISE LXXXV

Grammar: A. 283; 284; 414; 418. B. 167; 168; 223; 226. G. 205; 211; 403; 397. H. 393; 479; 480.

Inflection: *appellō* (3): *īnsula*; *ūnus*.

Order of words: the modifiers of the predicate are usually arranged, from the beginning, in the order of their importance.

THE SIZE AND SHAPE OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS

Īnsula¹ nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā² Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium,³ quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs **appelluntur**, ad orientem sōlem, īinferior ad meridiem⁴ spectat. Hoc latus tenet⁵ circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniā atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex⁶ parte est Hibernia īnsula, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque⁷ ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae īnsulae existimantur, dē quibus īnsulis nōn nūlli scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs trīgintā sub⁸ brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex **aqua**⁹ mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctīs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō¹⁰ lateris, ut fert illōrum opiniō, **septingentōrum** milium. Tertium est contrā septen-triōnēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus alter

maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc milium passuum **octingentōrum** in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīcīēs centum milium passuum. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 13

VOCABULARY

triquetus, a, um, <i>triangular</i>	brūma, ae, f., <i>winter solstice</i> (lit. <i>shortest</i>)
angulus, ī, m., <i>angle, corner</i>	percontātiō, īnis, f., <i>inquiry</i>
dīmidium, dīmī'dī, n., <i>half</i>	mēnsūra, ae, f., <i>measurement</i>
trānsmissus, ūs, m., <i>crossing</i>	vīcīēs, <i>twenty times</i>
scribō, 3, scripsī, scriptus, <i>write</i>	

NOTES

¹ īnsula: understand the verb.	² contrā: <i>opposite</i> .	³ Cantium: <i>Kent.</i>
⁴ ad meridiem: is this true? Meridiem = medius + diēs.		⁵ tenet: <i>extends</i> .
⁶ ex: <i>on</i> .	⁷ atque: <i>as</i> .	⁸ sub: <i>about</i> .
		⁹ ex aquā: i.e. by means of the water-clock.
		¹⁰ longitūdō: <i>composition?</i>

Think of English words from *orientem, sōlem, occidentem, obiectae, spectat, centum*, and observe the connection in meaning between the Latin word and the English derivative.

EXERCISE LXXXVI

Grammar: A. 415; 418. B. 224; 226. G. 400; 397. H. 473. 2; 480.

Inflection: efficiō; lac; multum (compare).

Order of words: a preposition is usually placed immediately before the word which it governs.

SOME OF THE CUSTOMS OF THE BRITONS

Ex hīs¹ omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī² quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs³ plērius frūmenta nōn serunt, sed **lacte** et **carne** vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestīti. Omnes vērō sē Britanni vitrō īficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem,⁴ atque hōc⁵ horribiliōrēs⁶ sunt in pugnā aspectū⁷; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

VOCABULARY

serō, 3. sēvī, satus, <i>sow</i>	caeruleus, a, um, <i>blue</i>
vīvō, 3. vīxī, vīctum, <i>live</i>	capillus, ī, m., <i>hair</i>
vestiō, 4, īvī, ītus, <i>clothe</i>	prōmittō, 3. mīsī, missus, <i>let grow</i>
vītrum, ī, n., <i>window</i> , a blue dye	rāsus, a, um, <i>shaved</i>
īnficiō, 3, fēcī, fectus, <i>stain</i>	labrum, ī, n., <i>lip</i>

NOTES

¹ hīs: i.e. *Britannī*. ² hūmānissimī: *homō + ānus*, *pertaining to*.
³ interiōrēs: English derivative? Understand *hominēs*. ⁴ colōrem: English derivative?
⁵ hōc: states a cause. ⁶ horribiliōrēs: English derivative from the positive? ⁷ aspectū: compare *cōspectus*, noting the prefix.

EXERCISE LXXXVII

Grammar: A. 345, a; 414; 429, 1. B. 203, 1; 223; 228, 1, b. G. 365; 403; 385. N. 1. H. 440, 3: 479; 485, 2.

Inflection: eō: genus: alter.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the noun which it limits.

CÆSAR CROSSES THE THAMES IN SPITE OF THE ENEMY'S RESISTANCE

Caesar cognitō cōnsiliō¹ eōrum² ad flūmen Tamesim in finīs Cassivellaunī³ exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest.⁴ Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertisit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium īstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtis sudibus praefixīsque mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā⁵ celeritātē atque eō impetū militēs iērunt, cum⁶ capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 18

VOCABULARY

<i>sudis, is, f., stake</i>	<i>tegō, 3, tēxi, tēctus, cover</i>
<i>praefigō, 3, fixi, fixus, set up in front</i>	<i>perfuga, ae, m., deserter exstō, 1, —, —, stand out</i>

NOTES

¹ *cōsiliō*: i.e. of fighting. ² *eōrum*: the Britons. ³ *Cassivellaunī*: one of the greatest of the ancient heroes of Britain. ⁴ *flūmen . . . potest*: not true; Caesar *found* but one. ⁵ *eā*: = *tantā* here. ⁶ *cum*: conjunction. Considering the phrase *capite sōlō* with *eā celeritāte iērunt*, what force must *cum* have?

Determine the force of the prefix in *praefixīs, dēfixae, subsequī, exstārent, dīmitterent*.

Cassivellaunus continues the warfare by attacking the Romans' foraging parties, and thus keeping them from going far from the camp in the search for supplies.

EXERCISE LXXXVIII

Grammar: A. 305; 563. B. 250, 1; 295, 1. G. 614; 546. H. 396; 565.

Inflection: *dēfendō*: *celeriter* (compare): *ipse*.

Order of words: an adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it limits.

THE TRINOVANTES SURRENDER TO CÆSAR

Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat, cuius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnū obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellaunō, ipse¹ fugā mortem vītāverat, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēdītūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem mittat, quī² praeſit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercitū, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit.³ Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque misērunt.

VOCABULARY

continēns, entis, f., *continent*vītō, i, *avoid*

NOTES

¹ ipse: Mandubracius. ² quī, etc.: states the purpose of *mittat*.
³ **Mandubracium . . . mittit**: by this means he gained their good will.

EXERCISE LXXXIX

Grammar: A. 346, a, 3; 420, i, 2; 556. B. 201, 2; 337, 2, a, f; 293, I. G. 369; 665; 666. H. 442; 638, i; 604, i.

Inflection: obses; nōbilis; hīc.

Order of words: dependent clauses, except those of purpose and result, tend to precede the main verb.

AFTER A LAST DESPERATE ATTEMPT TO DEFEAT
 THE ROMANS CASSIVELLAUNUS SURRENDERS TO
 CÆSAR

Dum haec¹ in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium,² quod esse ad³ mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regionibus⁴ quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiis castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā, multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumis redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis acceptīs, vāstātis finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum⁵ lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset⁶ hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis⁷ populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

DE BELLO GALICO, V, 22

VOCABULARY

<i>nāvālis, e, naval</i>	<i>vectīgal, ālis, n., tribute</i>
<i>dēfectiō, īnis, f., revolt</i>	<i>interdīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus, forbid</i>
<i>extrahō, 3, trāxī, trāctus, draw out</i>	

NOTES

¹ *haec*: i. e. the capture of the chief town of Cassivellaunus. ² *Cantium*: *Kent*. ³ *ad*: *near*. ⁴ *regiōnibus*: for the case, consider *praeerant*. ⁵ *cīvitātum*: five had surrendered to Caesar. ⁶ *cōnstituisset*: states a reason for *imperat*. ⁷ *vectīgalis*: with *quid*.

Observe the words in the passage ending in *tiō*. What is the force of this suffix?

Cæsar then returns with his fleet safely to Gaul.

EXERCISE XC

Grammar: A. 403, *a*; 410. B. 215; 218, 1. G. 395: 407. H. 469, 2; 477.

Inflection: *fiō*; *plūs*.

Order of words: the beginning of the clause or sentence is usually the emphatic position.

CÆSAR LEARNS OF THE MURDER OF TASGETIUS

Erat in Carnutibus summō locō¹ nātus Tasgetius, cuius maiōrēs in suā cīvitātē rēgnū obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā² quod in omnibus bellī singulārī³ eius operā⁴ fuerat⁵ ūsus, maiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc⁶ annum rēgnantem⁷ inimīcī⁸ palam multīs ex cīvitātē auctōribus⁹ interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrīs pertinēbat,¹⁰ nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, Lūcium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgīo celeriter in Carnutēs proficisci iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque¹¹ operā¹² cognōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus quibus legiōnēs trādiderat certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernīs esse mūnītūm. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 25

VOCABULARY

palam, *openly*
impulsus, *ūs*, m., *instigation*

comprehendō, 3, *hendī*, *hēnsus*,
seize

NOTES

¹ locō: *rank*. ² benevolentiā: *bene* + *volō* + *tia*. ³ singulārī: English derivative? ⁴ operā: synonym of *opus*. ⁵ fuerat: translate as *erat*. ⁶ hunc: refers to *Tasgetius*. ⁷ rēgnantem: synonym of *regō*. ⁸ inimīci: *in* + *amīcus*. ⁹ auctōribus: *augeō* + *tor*, *instigators*. ¹⁰ ad plūris pertinēbat: i.e. several persons were concerned in it. Note *multīs auctōribus* above. ¹¹ quōrum: the antecedent is *hōs*. ¹² operā: with *interfectum*.

Ambiorix, one of the chiefs of the Eburones, incites a serious revolt among several of the Gallic tribes, the Nervii among others. The winter quarters of Cicero, the commander of Cæsar's forces in this tribe, are besieged, and the situation is critical. Cicero gets a letter through the enemy's lines to Cæsar, and the latter at once marches to his relief with what troops he can gather.

EXERCISE XCI

Grammar: A. 345; 376; 531, 2. B. 203, 1; 188, 1; 282, 2. G. 365; 352; 630. H. 440. 3: 425, 2.

Inflection: cōnfīrmō; mīlle; certior.

Order of words: a variation from the usual position of a word makes the word emphatic.

LEARNING OF THE GAULS' ADVANCE, CÆSAR
PURPOSELY BUILDS A VERY SMALL CAMP TO
LURE THEM ON

Gallī rē cognitā¹ per explōrātōrēs **obsidiōnem** relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Haec² erant armāta circiter mīlia sexāgintā. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum³ ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit,⁴ quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hunc admonet⁵ iter cautē⁶ diligenterque faciat.⁷ Perscrībit in litterīs hostis ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātis suōs

facit certiorēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōfirmat. Posterō diē lūce pīmā movet castra, et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns **vallem** et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī periculī rēs tantulis cōpiis inīquō⁸ locō dīmicāre⁹; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum¹⁰ Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritātē¹¹ exīstīmābat. Cōnsidit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit¹²; atque haec etsī erant exigua¹³ per sē, vix hominum mīlium **septem**, praeſertim nūllis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiī viārum¹⁴ quam maximē potest contrahit eō cōſiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem¹⁵ hostibus veniat. Interim ſpeculātōribus in omnis partīs dimiſſis explōrat quō¹⁶ commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire pōſſit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 49

VOCABULARY

perscrībō, 3, **scripsī**, **ſcriptus**,
write in full
rīvus, 1, m.. stream

tantulus, a, um, *so little*
ſpeculātōr, ūris, m., *ſpy*

NOTES

¹ rē cognitā: i.e. the fact that Cæſar was coming to the relief of Cicero.
² haec: refers to cōpiis, but takes the gender of mīlia. ³ Gallum: a slave of Vertico, a Nervian. He had helped Cicero before. ⁴ repetit: composition?
⁵ admonet: = monet. ⁶ cautē: adverb from the participle of caveō. ⁷ faciat: shows purpose. ⁸ inīquō: in + aequus. ⁹ dīmicāre: used as a noun. ¹⁰ liberātum: verb formed from liber. Understand esse.
¹¹ remittendum dē celeritātē: *he might relax his speed.* ¹² commūnit: the prefix is intensive. ¹³ exigua: synonym of parvus. ¹⁴ angustiī viārum: *by narrowing the streets.* ¹⁵ contemptiōnem: English derivative?
¹⁶ quō: interrogative.

Explain the derivation of explōrātōrēs, multitūdinem, celeritātē. What is the stem of ſpeculātōribus, and what is its meaning?

EXERCISE XCII

Grammar: A. 423, 1; 507, 3. B. 230; 338, 4, b; 339, 1. G. 393; 433. H. 486; 631.

Inflection: recipiō; equester; uterque.

Order of words: prepositional phrases usually limit a word which follows them.

BOTH ARMIES AVOID A DECISIVE BATTLE

Eō diē parvulīs¹ equestrībus proeliis ad aquam factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō² continent, — Galli,³ quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostīs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contendēret⁴; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itinerībus minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret. Prīmā lūce hostiū equitātū ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitībus committit. Caesar cōsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnībus partībus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrāndīs rēbus quam maximē concursārī⁵ et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 50

VOCABULARY

forte, <i>by chance</i>	obstruō, 3, strūxī, strūctus,
ēliciō, 3, uī, itus, <i>entice</i>	block up
citrā, <i>this side of</i>	concursō, 1, <i>run to and fro</i>
rīvus, ī, m., <i>stream</i>	

NOTES

¹ parvulīs: parvus + ulus, *little*. Compare tantulus. ² locō: without in, as often. ³ Galli: understand sēsē suō locō continent. ⁴ contendēret: states the purpose of sēsē suō locō continent understood. ⁵ concursārī: impersonal.

Observe how the phrases in the passage illustrate the rule for the order of words.

EXERCISE XCIII

Grammar: A. 401; 420, 1, 2. B. 214, 1, b; 227, 2, a, b. G. 405; 410. H. 462: 489, 1.

Inflection: volō; manus: quis.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity usually precede the word which they modify.

AFTER LURING THE GAULS ON TO THE ATTACK CÆSAR
PUNISHES THEM SOUNDLY

Quibus omnibus rēbus¹ hostēs invītātē cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō² locō cōstituunt, nostris vērō etiam dē vällō dēductis proprius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibūs coniciunt, praecōnibusque circummissīs³ prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem.⁴ Ac sīc nostrōs contempserunt ut obstrūctis⁵ in speciem⁶ portis singulīs ūordinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vällum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō⁷ celeriter hostis in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex iīs numerum occidit atque omnīs armīs exuit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 51

VOCABULARY

praecō, ūnis, m., <i>herald</i>	intrōrumpō, 3, rūpī, <i>ruptus, break</i>
contemnō, 3, temp̄sī, <i>temptus, despise</i>	into
caesp̄s, itis, m., <i>sod</i>	scindō, 3, scidī, <i>scissus, tear down</i>
	exuō, 3, uī, ūtus, <i>strip</i>

NOTES

¹ quibus rēbus: i. e. those mentioned in the preceding chapter. ² inīquō: in + aequus. ³ circummissīs: composition? ⁴ potestātem: permission. ⁵ obstrūctis: participle from obstruō. English derivative? ⁶ in speciem: for the sake of appearance. ⁷ ēmissō: composition?

EXERCISE XCIV

Inflection: vereor; diēs.

Order of words: in a phrase or sentence the emphatic word usually stands first.

CÆSAR PRAISES CICERO FOR HIS BRAVE DEFENSE

Longius prōsequī veritus,¹ quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suis incolubus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Īnsti-tūtās turrīs, testūdinēs, mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn decimum quemque² esse reliquum mīlitēm sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātæ. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae³ certius ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē cōtiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātūr et cōfirmat. Interim ad Labiēnum⁴ per Rēmōs incrēdibili celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum⁵ ab hibernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter sexāgintā eōque post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervēnisset, ante medium noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre significātiō⁶ victōriæ grātulātiōque⁷ ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 52

VOCABULARY

conlaudō, *i.*, *praise highly*
singillātim, *one at a time*
testimōnium, *testimōniī*, *n.*, *evidence*

cōtiō, ūnis, *f.*, *assembly*
cōnsōlor, *i.*, *speak kindly to*
fāma, ae, *f.*, *report*

NOTES

¹ veritus: i.e. Cæsar. ² decimum quemque: *one in ten.* ³ Sabīnī et Cottae: treacherously killed by Ambiorix, after their forces had been ambushed. ⁴ Labiēnum: he was wintering among the Remi. ⁵ cum: considering the short time between hōram nōnam and medium noctem and the long distance traversed, what must *cum* mean? ⁶ significātiō: signum + faciō + tiō. ⁷ grātulātiō: from grātulor, *congratulate,*

EXERCISE XCV

Inflection: maneō; initium.

Order of words: when a noun is modified by an adjective and a genitive, the order often is: adjective, genitive, noun — the particular arrangement depending on emphasis.

THE WIDELY FELT DESIRE AMONG THE GAULS FOR A
REVOLT KEEPS CÆSAR UNEASY

Hāc fāmā¹ ad Trēverōs perlātā Indūtiomārus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppugnāre dēcrēverat,² noctū profugit cōpiāsque omnīs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar Fabium³ cum suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam⁴ trīnis⁵ hibernīs hiemāre cōnstituit; et quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exsiterant, tōtam **hiemem** ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommodō⁶ dē Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōsultābant, nūntiōs lēgātiōnēsque in omnīs partīs dīmittēbant, et quid reliquī cōnsili caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret explōrābant,⁷ nocturnaque⁸ in locīs dēsertis concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtius hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quīn⁹ aliquem dē cōnsiliis ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab Lūciō Rōsciō, quem legiōnī tertiae decimae praeferēcerat, certior factus est magnās Gallōrum cōpiās eārum cīvitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppugnandī suī causā convēnisse, neque longius mīlibus passuum octō ab hibernīs suīs āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesaris discessisse, adeō ut fugae similis¹⁰ discessus¹¹ vidērētur. At Caesar pīncipibus cuiusque cīvitātis ad sē **ēvocātīs** aliōs territandō,¹² cum sē scīre quae fierent dēnūntiāret,¹³ aliōs cohortandō magnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 53, 54

VOCABULARY

existō, 3, stitī, —, arise
cōsultō, 1, deliberate earnestly

sollicitūdō, inis, f., anxiety
adeō, to such a degree, so

NOTES

¹ fāmā: i. e. about Cæsar's success. ² dēcrēverat: synonym of cōstituō. ³ Fabium: in charge of the winter quarters among the Morini. ⁴ Samarobrīvam: a town of the Ambiani. ⁵ trīnīs: used for tribus with hibernīs, a noun used only in the plural. ⁶ incommodō: in + commodum. ⁷ explōrābant: compare with the noun explōrātor. ⁸ nocturna: nox + urnus, a time suffix. ⁹ quīn: without. ¹⁰ similis: English derivative? ¹¹ discessus: noun from discedō. ¹² territandō: by frightening. ¹³ dēnūntiāret: composition?

Observe the force of the prefix in *perlātā*, *redūcit*, *extiterant*, *dīmittēbant*, *praefererat*, *āfuisse*.

With the exception of the Aedui and the Remi, whom Cæsar had always especially honored, there is hardly a state that he does not suspect of considering a revolt.

EXERCISE XCVI

Order of words: in general a phrase or limiting expression is more likely to limit or depend on a word closely following it than on one that has gone before. This is because the limiting word is usually the emphatic part of the phrase.

INDUTIOMARUS TRIES TO ROUSE THE GERMANS AND
THE GAULS

Trēveri vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtīus hīemīs nūllum tempus intermisērunt quīn¹ trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, magnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ūlli cīvitātē Germānōrum persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dicerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tenciterōrum trānsitū²; nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lāpsus Indūtiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā fīnitimīs equōs parāre, exsulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā magnīs praemīs ad sē allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiām³ atque amīcitiam pūblicē pīvātimque⁴ peterent. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 55

VOCABULARY

<i>sollicitō</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>stir up</i>	<i>exsul</i> , <i>ulīs</i> , <i>m., f.</i> , <i>exile</i>
<i>pecūnia</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>money</i>	<i>damnō</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>convict</i>
<i>lābor</i> , <i>3</i> , <i>lāpsus</i> , <i>slip</i>	<i>alliciō</i> , <i>3</i> , <i>lexī</i> , <i>lectus</i> , <i>attract</i>
<i>exerceō</i> , <i>2</i> , <i>uī</i> , <i>itus</i> , <i>train</i>	

NOTES

¹ *quīn*: *without*. ² *trānsitū*: a verbal noun from *trānseō*. ³ *grātiam*: i. e. of Indutiomarus. ⁴ *privātīm*: compare with *nōminātīm*, *singillātīm*.

Select from the passage words that by their position illustrate the rule for the order of words.

EXERCISE XCVII

Order of words: an adverb usually precedes the word which it modifies.

SEVERAL STATES REBEL AGAINST THE ROMANS

Interfectō Indūtiomārō¹ ut docuimus, ad eius propinquōs ā Trēverīs imperium dēfertur. Illī finitimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniām pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temptant. Inventis² nōn nūllis cīvitātibus iūre iūrandō inter sē cōfirmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā carent³; Ambiorīgem sibi societāte et foedere adiungunt.⁴ Quibus rēbus cognitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Aduatucōs, Menapiōs adiūncētīs Cisrhēnānīs⁵ omnibus Germānīs esse in armīs, Senonēs ad imperātūm nōn venīre et cum Carnutībus finitimisque cīvitātibus cōnsilia commūnicārē,⁶ ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbrīs lēgātiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, VI, 2

VOCABULARY

<i>sollicitō</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>stir up</i>	<i>foedus</i> , <i>erīs</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>treaty</i>
<i>pecūnia</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>money</i>	<i>cōgitō</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>consider</i>
<i>societās</i> , <i>ātis</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>alliance</i>	

NOTES

¹ *Indūtiomārō*: he was killed by the soldiers of Labienus, who all aimed their weapons at him when he approached the camp with his cavalry in a foolhardy way. Labienus had offered great rewards to those who should kill Indutiomarus and thus end the uprising. ² *inventis*: composition? ³ *obsidibusque . . . cauent*: *give hostages as security for the money*. ⁴ *adiungunt*: composition? ⁵ *Cisrhēnānis*: *cis, on this side of, + Rhēnus + ānus, pertaining to*. ⁶ *commūnicāre*: English derivative?

Think of English words from *dēfertur*, *pecūniā*, *ulteriōrēs*, *inventis*, *foedere*, and observe how the meaning of the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English.

EXERCISE XCVIII

Order of words: the modifiers of the parts of an ablative absolute often stand between the words that compose it, the degree of emphasis of each word determining its position.

AFTER A RAID AMONG THE NERVII CÆSAR ENTERS
THE TERRITORY OF THE SENONES

Itaque nōndum **hieme** cōflectā, proximīs quattuor coāctīs legiōnibus, dē imprōvisō in finīs Nerviōrum contendit, et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magnō **pecoris** atque hominū numerō captō atque cā **praedā** militibus concessā vāstātisque agrīs, in dēditiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōflectō negōtiō rūrsus in hiberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae primō vēre, ut¹ instituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent, initium belli ac dēficiōnis hoc² esse arbitrātus,³ ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam⁴ Parīsiorum trānsfert. Cōfinēs⁵ erant hī Senonibus cīvitātemque patrum memoriā coniūnixerant, sed ab hōc cōsiliō āfuisse exīstīmābantur. Hāc rē⁶ prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur magnisque itineribus eō pervenit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, VI, 3

VOCABULARY

vēr, vēris, n., <i>spring</i>	postpōnō, 3, posuī, <i>positus</i> ,
indicō, 3, dīxī, <i>dictus, appoint</i>	deem less <i>important</i>
dēfectiō, ūnis, f., <i>revolt</i>	suggestus, ūs, m., <i>tribunal</i>

NOTES

¹ ut: notice the mood following. ² hoc: refers to *praeter . . . Trēverōs*, i.e. their absence. ³ arbitrātus: synonym of *existimō*. ⁴ Lutetiam: the modern Paris. ⁵ cōfinēs: synonym of *fīnitimus*. ⁶ hāc rē: i.e. ab . . . āfuisse.

EXERCISE XCIX

Order of words: in any phrase the determining or emphatic word comes first.

CÆSAR'S ARRIVAL DISCONCERTS THE SENONES AND THE CARNUTES, AND THEY SUBMIT

Cognitō eius¹ adventū Accō,² quī pīnceps eius cōnsili³ fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre. Cōnāntibus,⁴ priusquam id effici posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessāriō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduōs, quōrum antiquitus⁵ erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Caesar potentibus Aeduīs dat veniam excūsātiōnemque⁶ accipit, quod aestīvum tempus īstantis⁷ belli, nōn quaestīonis⁸ esse arbitrābātur.⁹ Obsidibus imperātīs centum hōs Aeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt ūsī dēprecātōribus¹⁰ Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientēlā; eadem ferunt respōnsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus.

DE BELLO GALLICO, VI, 4

VOCABULARY

adsum, esse, fuī, ——, <i>be present</i>	aestīvus, a, um, <i>of summer, summer</i>
dēprecō, 1, <i>beg off</i>	custōdiō, 4, īvī, ītus, <i>watch</i>
libenter, <i>willingly</i>	clientēla, ae, f., <i>protection</i>
venia, ae, f., <i>pardon</i>	

NOTES

¹ eius: i.e. Cæsar's. ² Accō: a leader of the Senones. ³ cōnsili: i.e. for a revolt. ⁴ cōnāntibus: i.e. in oppida convenīre. ⁵ antiquitus: adverb from antiquus, which is synonymous with *vetus*. ⁶ excūsatiōnem: excūsō + tiō. ⁷ instantis: *impending*, i.e. the one with the Treveri. ⁸ quaestiōnis: quaerō + tiō. ⁹ arbitrābātur: synonym of existimō. ¹⁰ dēpēcātōribus: derivation?

Under the leadership of Vercingetorix, the most heroic figure in the struggle of Gaul against the Romans, a general uprising occurs. After much desperate fighting, sacking of towns, and laying waste of fields, the advantage being on the side of the Romans, Vercingetorix makes a last stand in Alesia, now called Alise-Sainte-Reine, a town in central Gaul.

THE SIEGE OF ALESIA

castella

ROMAN MILE

1

1/2

1/4

1/8

1/16

1/32

1/64

1/128

1/256

1/512

1/1024

1/2048

1/5120

1/10240

1/20480

1/40960

1/81920

1/163840

1/327680

1/655360

1/1310720

1/2621440

1/5242880

1/10485760

1/20971520

1/41943040

1/83886080

1/167772160

1/335544320

1/671088640

1/1342177280

1/2684354560

1/5368709120

1/10737418240

1/21474836480

1/42949672960

1/85899345920

1/171798691840

1/343597383760

1/687194767520

1/1374389535040

1/2748779070080

1/5497558140160

1/10995116280320

1/21990232560640

1/43980465121280

1/87960930242560

1/17592186045120

1/35184372080240

1/70368744160480

1/14073748832960

1/28147497665920

1/56294995331840

1/112589990663680

1/225179981327360

1/450359962654720

1/900719925309440

1/180143985061880

1/360287970123760

1/720575940247520

1/1441151880495040

1/2882303760990080

1/5764607521980160

1/11529215043960320

1/23058430087920640

1/46116860175841280

1/92233720351682560

1/184467440703365120

1/368934881406730240

1/737869762813460480

1/1475739525626920960

1/2951479051253841920

1/5902958102507683840

1/11805916205015367680

1/23611832410030735360

1/47223664820061470720

1/94447329640122941440

1/188894659280245882880

1/377789318560491765760

1/755578637120983531520

1/1511157274219667063040

1/3022314548439334126080

1/6044629096878668252160

1/12089258193557336504320

1/24178516387114673008640

1/48357032774229346017280

1/96714065548458692034560

1/193428131096917384069120

1/386856262193834768138240

1/773712524387669536276480

1/1547425048775339072552960

1/3094850097550678145105920

1/6189700195101356290211840

1/1237940039020271258042960

1/2475880078040542516085920

1/4951760156081085032171840

1/9903520312162170064343680

1/19807040624324340128687360

1/39614081248648680257374720

1/79228162497297360514749440

1/15845632495459472102949880

1/31691264990918944205899760

1/63382529981837888411799520

1/12676505984367577682359040

1/25353011968735155364718080

1/50706023937470310729436160

1/101412047874946221458872320

1/202824095749892442917744640

1/405648191499784885835489280

1/811296382999569771670978560

1/1622592765999139543341957120

1/3245185531998279086683914240

1/6490371063996558173367828480

1/12980742127993116346735656960

1/25961484255986232693471313920

1/51922968511972465386942627840

1/103845937023948930733845255680

1/207691874047897861467689511360

1/415383748095795722935379022720

1/830767496191591445870758045440

1/1661534922383182811741516090880

1/3323069844766365623483032181760

1/6646139689532731246966064363520

1/1329227937906546249393212873040

1/2658455875813092498786425746080

1/5316911751626184997572851492160

1/10633823503252789951545702984320

1/21267647006505579903091405968640

1/42535294013011159806182801937280

1/85070588026022319612365603874560

1/17014117605204663824673120749120

1/34028235210409327649346241498240

1/68056470420818655298692482996480

1/136112940841637310597384965992960

1/272225881683274621194769931985920

1/544451763366549242389539863971840

1/1088903326733094884779078127943680

1/2177806653466189769558156255887360

1/4355613306932379539116312511774720

1/8711226613864759078232625023549440

1/1742245322772919515646525004709880

1/3484490645545839031293050009419760

1/6968981291091678062586100018839520

1/1393796258218355612517200037779040

1/2787592516436711225034400075558080

1/5575185032873422450068800151116160

1/1115037006574684490013760302232320

1/2230074013149368980027520604464640

1/4460148026298737960055041208929280

1/8920296052597475920011082417858560

1/1784059210519495180022164835717120

1/3568118421038990360044329671434240

1/7136236842077980720088659342868480

1/1427247368415960144017318684541680

1/2854494736831920288034637369083360

1/5708989473663840576069274738166720

1/1141797894732720115213854747633360

1/2283595789465440230427709495266720

1/4567191578930880460855418990533440

1/913438315786176092161083798106680

1/1826876631572352184321767962033360

1/3653753263144704368643535924066720

1/7307506526289408737287071848133440

1/1461501305257881464574142688266880

1/2923002610515762929148285376533760

1/5846005221031525858296570753067520

1/1169201042062305171659354150613520

1/2338402084124610343318708301227040

1/4676804168249220686637416602454080

1/9353608336498441373274833204908160

1/18707216672976882746549666409816320

1/37414433345953765493099332819632640

1/74828866691907530986198665639265280

1/149657733383815061972397331278530560

1/29931546676763012394479466255705120

1/59863093353526024788958932511410240

1/11972618670705204957791766502280480

1/23945237341410409915583533004560960

1/47890474682820819831167066009121920

1/95780949365641639662334132018243840

1/19156189873128327932468266403647680

1/38312379746256655864936532807295360

1/76624759492513311729873065614580720

1/15324951894526622345746011228117440

1/30649803789053244691492022456234880

1/6129960757810648938298404491246960

1/1225992151562129787659688898249320

1/2451984303124259575319377796498640

1/4903968606248519150638755592997280

1/9807937212497038301275511185994560

1/1961587442499407660255122371989120

1/3923174884998815320510244743978240

1/7846349769997630641020489487956480

1/1569269953999526128204097895592880

1/3138539907999052256408195791185760

1/6277079815998024512816391582371520

1/12554159631996049025632783164743040

1/25108319263992098051265566329486080

1/50216638527984196102531132658972160

1/100433277059763922205062655317944320

1/200866554119527844410125310635888640

1/401733108239055688820250621271777280

1/803466216478111377640501242543554560

1/160693243295622675528100248587110920

1/321

DE BELLO GALLICO, VII

VERCINGETORIX WITHDRAWS INTO ALESIA, CÆSAR AT HIS HEELS

68. Fugātō omni equitatū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut¹ prō castris conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque² Alesiam, quod³ est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit, celeriterque impedimenta ex castris ēdūci et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostis quantum⁴ diēi tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatū,⁵ quā maximē parte exercitūs cōfidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus⁶ ad labōrem militēs Alesiam circumvallāre īstituit.

THE NATURAL SURROUNDINGS OF ALESIA

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō, admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi⁷ obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cuius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum

fugō, 1, *put to flight*

admodum, *very*

situs, ūs, m., *situation*

subluō, 3, ——, lūtum, *wash*

circumvallō, 1, *build intrenchments around*

¹ *ut*: notice the mood of *conlocāverat*. ² *prōtinus*: synonym of *statim*.

³ *quod*: takes the gender of *oppidum*. ⁴ *quantum*: *as far as*. ⁵ *equitatū*: ablative of specification, but translate as subject of the verb which it limits.

⁶ *adhortātus*: = *hortātus*. ⁷ *nisi*: with *obsidiōne*.

Observe that the words *prōtinus*, *celeriter*, *proximum*, and *quantum* . . . *passum*, and the short, crisp phrases make vivid the haste of this flight and the fierceness of the pursuit.

plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquī ex omnībus partībus collēs mediocrī interiectō¹ spatiō parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam² in altitūdinem sex pedum praedūxerant.³ Eius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īstituēbātur circuitus īndēcim mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnī locī erant posita octōna castellaque vīgintī tria facta, quibus in castellis interdiū statīōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua⁴ subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

A CAVALRY BATTLE IS FOUGHT, IN WHICH CÆSAR'S
GERMAN TROOPS KILL MANY OF THE GAULS

70. Opere⁵ īstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem⁶ patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrisque contenditū.⁷ Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō ēruptiō ab hostiū peditātū⁸ fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō⁹ nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine¹⁰ impeditūnt atque angustiōribus portis relictis coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūlli relictis equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānsīdere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō

plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain*
mediocris, e, *moderate*
fastīgium, fastīgiī, n., *degree*
interdiū, *by day*
excubitor, īris, m., *watchman*

irruptiō, īnis, f., *invasion*
coartō, ī, *press together*
ūsque, *all the way*
caedēs, is, f., *slaughter*

¹ interiectō: composition? ² māceriam: synonym of mūrus. ³ praedūxerant: composition? ⁴ qua: any. ⁵ opere: i.e. of building the encompassing fortifications. ⁶ longitūdinem: derivation? ⁷ contenditū: impersonal. ⁸ peditātū: synonym of peditēs. Compare equitātus and equitēs. ⁹ additō: participle. English derivative? ¹⁰ multitūdine: states the cause of impeditūnt.

cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur, venīrī¹ ad sē cōfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūlli perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt.² Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectis, complūribus equis captis Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

VERCINGETORIX SENDS AWAY ALL THE CAVALRY,
URGING THEM TO RAISE FORCES FOR THE RELIEF
OF ALESIA

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōsiliū capit omnem ab sē equitātū noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus³ mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnīsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant; sua in⁴ illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suac salūtis ratiōnem⁵ habeant, neu⁶ sē optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum⁷ hostībus in cruciātū dēdant. Quod sī indiligētōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominū dēlēcta octōgintā ūnā sēcūm interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne⁸ initā frūmentum sē exiguē⁹ diērum trīgintā habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī¹⁰ posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs¹¹ quā erat nostrum opus intermissum secundā vigiliā silentiō¹² equitātū dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitīs poenam iīs quī nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; **pecus**, cuius magna erat cōpia ā

claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, *shut*
aetās, ātis, f., *age*
obtestor, 1, *call to witness*
indiligēns, entis, *careless*

intereō, 4, iī, itum, *perish*
parcō, 3. pepercī, parsūm, *spare*
poena, ae, f., *punishment*
pāreō, 2, uī, —, *obey*

¹ *venīrī*: *the enemy were coming*. Impersonal. ² *irrumpunt*: from the root of this verb is derived *irruptiō*. ³ *discēdentibus*: understand *iīs*. ⁴ *in*: *toward*. ⁵ *ratiōnem*: *regard*. ⁶ *neu*: *and not*. ⁷ *meritum*: participle; translate by a relative clause. ⁸ *ratiōne*: *reckoning*. This begins an indirect statement, depending on the verb *dēmōnstrat*. ⁹ *exiguē*: synonym of *vix*. ¹⁰ *tolerārī*: nearly = *ferō*; impersonal. ¹¹ *mandātīs*: noun. ¹² *silentiō*: noun. English derivative?

Mandubiis compulsa, virītim¹ distribuit; frūmentum parcē² et paulātim mētīrī instituit; cōpiās omnīs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

THE GAULS RAISE A GREAT ARMY AND PROCEED TO
ALESIA

76. Huius operā Commī,³ ut anteā⁴ dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēlī⁵ atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritiū cīvitātem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque red-diderat, atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae⁶ Galliae cōsēnsiō⁷ fuit libertatis vindicandae⁸ et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae ut neque beneficiis neque amīcītiae memoriā movē-rētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incum-berent. Coāctīs equitum milibus octō et peditum circiter ducentīs quīnquāgintā, haec in Aeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur nume-rusque inibātur, praefectū cōnstituēbantur; Commīō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorigī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō,

mētior, 4. mēnsus, *measure out*
immūnis, e, *untaxed*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law*
attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*
laus, laudis, f., *glory*

recuperō, 1, *recover*
(ops), opis, f., *resources*
incumbō, 3, cubuī, —, *exert*
oneself
recēnseō, 2, uī, us, *review*

¹ virītim: vir + (i)tim, *man by man*. Compare nōminātim. ² parcē: adverb; compare parcō. ³ Commī: he was sent by Cæsar into Britain to persuade the states there to submit to the Roman rule. ⁴ anteā: adverb, synonym of ante. ⁵ fidēlī: fidēs + ēlis, *pertaining to*. ⁶ ūniversae: English derivative? Synonym of tōtus. ⁷ cōsēnsiō: con + sentiō + tiō. ⁸ vindicandae: synonym of dēfendō.

In order to bring about the surrender of Alesia and to prevent other forces being added to those in the town, Cæsar constructed an elaborate system of fortifications, extending fourteen miles. These consisted of deep trenches, high walls, and several rows of sharpened stakes, besides others set up at the bottom of pits, which were covered with branches to conceal them.

cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa¹ imperī trāditur. His² dēlēctī³ ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnes **alacrēs** et fidūciae⁴ plēnī⁵ ad Alesiam proficīscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum⁶ modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī⁷ proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs pedestrīsque cernerentur.

THE GAULS IN ALESIA DEBATE THEIR FUTURE ACTION.
CRITOGNATUS BEGINS HIS SPEECH

77. At iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omni frūmentō, īscī⁸ quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōsultābant.⁹ Ac variis dictis sententiis, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum virēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ḫrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius¹⁰ singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem. Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis,¹¹ "Nihil," inquit,¹² "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs¹³ civium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum his mihi rēs¹⁴ est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō

cōnsobrīnus, ī, m., *first cousin*
forīs, *outside*
obsidēō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *besiege*
praetereō, 4, iī, itus, *pass over*
exitus, ūs, m., *outcome*

suppetō, 3, petīvī, petītus, *hold out*
cēnseō, 2, ui, ūs, *propose, consider*
nefārius, a, um, *wicked*
crūdēlitās, ātis, f., *cruelty*
turpis, e, *shameful*

¹ summa: noun. ² his: i.e. those just mentioned. ³ dēlēctī: understand hominēs. ⁴ fidūciae: synonym of fidēs. ⁵ plēnī: synonym of complētus. ⁶ aspectum: synonym of cōspectus. ⁷ ancipitī: *in front and rear.* ⁸ īscī: *in + sciō.* ⁹ cōsultābant: English derivative? ¹⁰ eius: i.e. ḫrātiōnis. ¹¹ auctōritātis: a quality of hīc. ¹² inquit: defective verb, synonym of dicō. ¹³ habendōs: understand esse. Compare this form with dictūrus sum above. Habeō, consider. ¹⁴ rēs: *business.*

Note the size and the spirit of the army which came to free Alesia.

omnium vestrum cōsēnsū¹ prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse.² Qui³ sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem⁴ patienter⁵ ferant."

CRITOGNATUS APPEALS TO HIS HEARERS NOT TO LOSE FAITH IN THE GAULS WHO HAVE NOT YET BEEN ABLE TO REACH THEM

77. "Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem⁶ (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam⁷ vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus,⁸ quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid,⁹ hominum mīlibus octōgintā ūnō locō interfectis, propinquīs¹⁰ cōsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore existimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte¹¹ hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritātē vestrā aut animī imbēcillitātē omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An,¹² quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis

resideō, 2, sēdī, ——, linger
 mollitia, ae, f., *weakness*
 dignitās, ātis, f., *honor*
 vīta, ae, f., *life*
 iactūra, ae, f., *loss*
 concitō, 1, *stir up*
 cadāver, eris, n., *dead body*

exspoliō, 1, *deprive*
 stultitia, ae, f., *folly*
 temeritās, ātis, f., *rashness*
 imbēcillitās, ātis, f., *weakness*
 prōsternō, 3, strāvī, strātus, *ruin*
 ergō, *then, therefore*

¹ cōsēnsū: *con + sentiō + tus.* ² paulisper . . . posse: used as a noun in apposition with *ista*. ³ qui: the antecedent is the subject of *reperiuntur*.

⁴ dolōrem: *doleō + or, act of.* ⁵ patienter: adverb from the present participle of *patior*. English derivative? ⁶ probārem: *should approve.* ⁷ praeterquam: adverb; compare with *praeter*. ⁸ respiciāmus: introduce the translation by *let.* ⁹ quid: with *animī*. ¹⁰ propinquīs, etc.: dative of the possessor. In translating, make this the subject of the clause, and render *fore* by the appropriate tense of *have*. ¹¹ nōlīte: *do not.* ¹² an: the sign of a question, introducing the clause beginning with *dē*. Translate by *or*.

ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animīne¹ causā cotidiē exercērī putātis? Si illōrum nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis omni aditū praesaep̄tō, hīs ūtiminī testibus appropinquārē eōrum adventum²; cuius rei timōre exterriti³ diem noctemque in opere versantur.”

CRITOGNATUS PROPOSES A BARBAROUS PLAN FOR
RESISTING THE ROMANS

77. “Quid ergō mei cōnsili⁴ est? Facere quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsi ac simili inopiā subacti eōrum corporibus⁵ quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs⁶ vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt⁷ neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā īstitui⁸ et posteris prōdi⁹ pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illi simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā¹⁰ Galliā Cimbrī magnāque illātā calamitāte finibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt, iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adducti, quōs¹¹ fāmā nōbilis potentisque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōsiderē atque hīs aeternam¹² iniungere¹³ servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condicōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea

exerceō, 2, uī, itus, *occupy*
praesaep̄iō, 4, saepsī, saeptus,
 block
testis, is, m., f., *witness*
ergō, then, *therefore*
nēquāquam, *by no means*
similis, e, *like*
subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, *drive*

aetās, ātis, f., *age*
vīta, ae, f., *life*
exemplum, ī, n., *precedent*
aliquandō, *at length*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law*
invidiā, ae, f., *envy*
fāma, ae, f., *reputation*
umquam, *ever*

¹ animīne: note the question sign. ² adventum: subject of appropinquārē. ³ exterriti: synonym of perterriti. ⁴ cōsili: predicate genitive. ⁵ corporibus: ablative of means. ⁶ inūtilēs: in + ūtilis, from ūtor. ⁷ tolerāvērunt: synonym of ferō. ⁸ īstitui: understand id as subject, referring to exemplum. ⁹ prōdi: synonym of trādō. ¹⁰ dēpopulātā: synonym of poplōr. ¹¹ quōs: the antecedent is hōrum. ¹² aeternam: synonym of perpetuus. ¹³ iniungere: composition?

quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis, secūribus¹ subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte."

THE GAULS SEND OUT FROM ALESIA THOSE USELESS
FOR FIGHTING

78. Sententiis dictis cōnstituunt ut iī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs² sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius³ experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant⁴; illō tamen potius ūtendum⁵ cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubii,⁶ qui eōs⁷ oppidō recēperant, cum liberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ūrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis⁸ in vāllō custōdiis recipi⁹ prohibēbat.

THE MAIN FORCES OF THE GAULS REACH ALESIA AND
ALL PREPARE FOR A SALLY

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs quibus summa imperī permīssa erat cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mille passibus ā nostrīs mūnitiōnibus cōsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiēm quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum tria patēre

ignōrō, *i*, *be unacquainted with*
commūtō, *i*, *change*
valētūdō, *inis*, *f.*, *sickness*
aetās, *ātis*, *f.*, *age*

uxor, ūris, *f.*, *wife*
custōdia, *ae*, *f.*, *guard*
plānitiēs, *ēi*, *f.*, *plain*

¹ secūribus: *axes*, but used as a symbol of Roman authority. ² inūtilēs: in + ūtilis, from ūtor. ³ prius: with quam. ⁴ dēscendant: English derivative? ⁵ ūtendum: impersonal; an indirect statement with esse understood. Make cōnsiliō the subject in the translation. ⁶ Mandubii: the tribe in whose territory Alesia was situated. ⁷ eōs: the Gauls. ⁸ dispositis: composition? ⁹ recipi: *from being received*.

dēmōnstrāvimus complent, pedestrīsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās¹ in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus² in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliūs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs, atque omnīum animī ad laetitiam excitantur.³ Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsistunt, et proximā fossam crātībus integūnt atque aggere explent,⁴ sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnīs cāsūs comparant.

AFTER A FIERCE FIGHT THE GAULS RETREAT AND
THOSE IN THE TOWN LOSE HOPE

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō,⁵ ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūci et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnībus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intentī⁶ pugnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs⁷ sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant,⁸ quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent⁹ et nostrōrum equitūm impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōfiderent et nostrōs multitudine premī vidērent, ex omnībus partibus et iī quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur et iī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnīum rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē aut turpiter

grātulātiō, ūnis, f., *rejoicing*

laetitia, ae f., *gladness*

crātēs, ium, f., *wickerwork*

integō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, *cover over*

prōventus, ūs, m., *outcome*

sagittārius, sagittārī, m., *bowman*

armātūra, ae, f., *armor*

ululātūs, ūs, m., *yelling*

rēctē, *rightly*

turpiter, *disgracefully*

¹ abductās: composition? ² dēspectus: dēspiciō + tus. ³ excitantur: English derivative? ⁴ explent: note the prefix, and compare with compleō. ⁵ dispositō: composition? ⁶ intentī: adjective. English derivative? ⁷ rārōs: *here and there.* ⁸ interiēcerant: composition?

⁹ succurrerent: *sub, up to.*

factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās¹ et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat.² Cum ā meridiē³ prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā⁴ victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertis turmīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt⁵; quībus in fugam coniectī sagittārii circumventī interfictīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdēntīs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī qui Alesiā prōcessērunt, maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā,⁶ sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

THE GAULS OUTSIDE THE TOWN, HELPED BY THOSE
WITHIN, TRY A NIGHT ATTACK

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō⁷ magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrīs mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significatiōne⁸ qui⁹ in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātīs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lāpidibūs nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliquaque quae ad oppugnatiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exauditō¹⁰ dat tubā signum suīs Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus

laus, laudis, f., *praise*
ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace*
turma, ae, f., *troop*
ūsque, *all the way*
colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *rally*
maestus, a, um, *sad*
crātēs, ium, f., *wickerwork*

scālāe, ārum, f., *scaling ladders*
harpagō, ūnis, m., *wall hook*
silentium, silentī, n., *silence*
campester, tris, tre, *in the plain*
obsidēō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *besiege*
funda, ae, f., *sling*
prōturbō, 1, *drive off*

¹ cupiditās: derivation? ² excitābat: English derivative? ³ meridiē: medius + diēs. ⁴ dubiā: adjective; compare with dubitō. ⁵ prōpulērunt: composition? ⁶ dēspērātā: composition? ⁷ spatiō: expresses the time within which the action of effectō happened. ⁸ significatiōne: signum + faciō + tiō. ⁹ qui: understand iī, subject of possent, as antecedent. ¹⁰ exauditō: composition?

attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs librīlibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent.¹ Prōspectū² tenebrīs adēmptō multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentis tēla coniciuntur. At Mārcus Antōnius et Gāius Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant,³ quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

THE GAULS, HAVING TWICE TRIED TO FORCE THE WORKS, RETIRE

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant⁴; posteāquam⁵ propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs⁶ inopīnāntēs induēbant aut in scrobīs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pīlis mūrālibus⁷ interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret,⁸ veritā nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnēm praeparātā⁹ erant prōferunt, priōrēs

attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, assign
lībrīle, is, throwing a stone weighing
a pound
sudis, is, f., stake
glāns, glandis, f., bullet
tenebrae, ārum, f., darkness
tormentum, ī, n., hurling machine
inopīnāns, inopīnāntis, unaware

induō, 3, duī, dūtus, impale
scrobis, is, m., pit
trānsfodiō, 3, fōdī, fossus, run
through
trāiciō, 3, iēcī, iectus, transfix
intereō, 4, iī, itum, perish
perrumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, break
through

¹ prōterrent: prō, off. ² prōspectū: compare with cōspectus, noting the prefix. ³ obvēnerant: composition? ⁴ plūs prōficiēbant: they did more execution. ⁵ posteāquam: = postquam. ⁶ stimulīs: Caesar describes these as "stakes a foot long with iron hooks on them." They were driven into the ground around and between pits. ⁷ mūrālibus: mūrus + alis, pertaining to. ⁸ appeteret: synonym of appropinquō. ⁹ praeparātā: composition?

Observe the many words in chapter 81 referring to the equipment used by the Gauls and Romans in the assault.

fossās explent,¹ diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius² suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mūnītiōnībus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā³ in oppidum revertērunt.

SIXTY THOUSAND OF THE GAULS PREPARE TO ASSAULT
THE UPPER CAMP

83. **Bis** magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsi Gallī quid agant cōsulunt; locōrum⁴ perītōs⁵ adhibent, ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentrīōnībus collis quem propter magnitūdinem circuitūs opere⁶ circumplexī nōn potuerant nostrī, necessāriōque paene iniquō⁷ locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec Gāius Antistius Rēgīnus et Gāius Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnībus obtinēbant. Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnībus ducēs hostiū sexāgintā mīlia ex omnī numérō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātūm quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnēm habēbant; quid quōque⁸ pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt cum merīdīēs⁹ esse videātur. His cōpiīs Vercassi-vellaunum Arvernūm, ūnum ex quattuor ducibūs, propinquūm Vercingetorīgis, praeſiciunt. Ille ex caſtrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus prope cōflectō sub lūcem¹⁰ itinere post montē sē occultāvit mīlītēsque ex nocturnō¹¹ labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdīēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea caſtra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātūs ad campeſtrīs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō caſtrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

situs, ūs, m., *location*

placeō, 2, uī, itum, *be pleasing*

circumplexor, 3, *plexus, encircle*

dēfīniō, 4, īvī, ītus, *fix*

lēniter, *moderately*

occultō, 1, *hide*

dēclīvī, e, s. *slope*

campeſter, tris, *tre, in the plain*

pactum, ī, n., *manner*

¹ explent: compare compleō, noting the prefix. ² prius: take with quam.

³ infectā: in + faciō. Compare English "done," "undone." ⁴ locōrum: limits perītōs. ⁵ perītōs: understand eōs. ⁶ opere: i. e. the fortifications.

⁷ iniquō: in + aequus. ⁸ quōque: not from quisque. ⁹ merīdīēs: medius + diēs. ¹⁰ sub lūcem: *about dawn.* ¹¹ nocturnō: nox + urnus, a time suffix.

THE GAULS SALLY FORTH FROM ALESIA AND UNITE WITH THEIR FORCES OUTSIDE IN AN ATTACK ON THE ROMANS

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suos conspicatus ex oppidō ēgreditur; cratis, longuriōs, mūrālis¹ falcis, reliquaequaeque quae ēruptionis causā parāverat prōfert.² Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locis atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantis mūnitiōnibus distinētur³ nec facile plūribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs⁴ nostrōs valet clāmor qui post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum periculum in aliēnā vident virtute cōstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentis perturbant.

THE GAULS MAKE A DESPERATE EFFORT TO FORCE THE ROMAN LINES

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit,⁵ labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque⁶ ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō⁷ maximē contendī conveniat⁸: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant⁹; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad¹⁰ superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur,¹¹ quō Vercassivel-launum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum¹² loci ad dēclivitātem¹³ fastigium magnum habet mōmentum. Alii tēla coniciunt, aliī

¹ mūrālis: mūrus + ālis. ² prōfert: composition? ³ distinētū: dis + teneō. ⁴ terrendōs: compare with perterreō. ⁵ cognōscit: understand et connecting this word with submittit. ⁶ utrīsque: dative of reference; of both parties. ⁷ quō: expresses time when. ⁸ conveniat: it is fitting. ⁹ dēspērānt: composition? ¹⁰ ad: near. ¹¹ labōrātū: impersonal. ¹² iniquum: composition? ¹³ ad dēclivitātem: downward.

testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātis invicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum¹ dat Gallis et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

THE GAULS, REPULSED, ATTACK ANOTHER PART OF THE WORKS

86. His rēbus cognitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō² labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne³ pugnet; id, nisi necessāriō, nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmīcātiōnum⁴ frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs⁵ dēspērātis campestribus locīs propter magnitūdinem mūnītiōnum loca praerupta ascēnsū⁶ temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prō-pugnantīs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent,⁷ falcibus vāllum ac lōrīcam rescindunt.

C.ESAR DRIVES BACK THE GAULS AND GOES TO THE HELP OF LABIENUS

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis Gāium Fabium lēgātūm; postrēmō ipse, cum vehe-mentius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō

dēfatīgō, 1, <i>weary</i>	praeruptus, a, um, <i>steep</i>
invicem, <i>in turn</i>	crātēs, ium, f., <i>wickerwork</i>
integer, gra, grum, <i>fresh</i>	falx, falcis, f., <i>hook</i>
occultō, 1, <i>hide</i>	lōrīca, ae, f., <i>breastwork</i>
contegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, <i>cover</i>	rescindō, 3, scidī, scissus, <i-tear down<="" i=""></i-tear>
suppetō, 3, petīvī, petītus, <i>hold out</i>	adulēscēns, entis, m., <i>youth</i> ; as adj.,
succumbō, 3, cubui, —, <i>yield</i>	<i>young</i>
frūctus, ūs, m., <i>reward</i>	vehementer, <i>furiously</i>

¹ ascēnsum: noun from ascendō. ² subsidiō: expresses purpose.

³ ēruptiōne: expresses manner. ⁴ dīmīcātiōnum: derivation? ⁵ interiōrēs: understand iī. ⁶ ascēnsū: with praerupta. ⁷ explent: compare with compleō.

ac repulsis hostibus eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortīs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumire exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostis adorirī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostiū sustinēre poterant, coāctīs ūndecim cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit,¹ Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat² Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

THE GALlic FORCES OUTSIDE ARE DEFEATED, AND
THOSE WITHIN ALESIA LOSE HOPE

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsis quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec³ dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proeliū committunt. Utrīmque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnībus clāmor. Nostri ēmissīs⁴ pīlīs gladiīs⁵ rem gerunt. Repente⁶ post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et pīncēps Lemovicū, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militāria septuāgintā quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō sē incolūmēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnītiōnībus redūcunt. Fit⁷ prōtinus⁸ hāc rē auditā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga.

fors, fortis, f., *chance*

caedēs, is, f., *slaughter*

vestītūs, ūs, m., *clothing, robe*

vīvus, a, um, *living*

turma, ae, f., *troop*

comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus,

dēclīvis, e, *sloping*

seize

dēvexus, a, um, *steep*

¹ obtulit: composition? ² accelerat: *ad + celerō*; compare the adjective *celer*. ³ haec: i.e. places. ⁴ ēmissīs: synonym of *iaciō*. ⁵ gladiīs: states the means of *gerunt*. ⁶ repente: synonym of *subitō*. ⁷ fit, etc.: observe the inversion of the usual order of words. ⁸ prōtinus: synonym of *statim* and *continuō*.

Quod¹ nisi crēbrīs subsidiis ac tōtīs diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōsequitur; magnus numerus capitū atque interficitur, reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

THE NEXT DAY AFTER A COUNCIL IN THE TOWN
VERCINGETORIX SURRENDERS WITH THE OTHER
GALLIC CHIEFS

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum,² sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum,³ ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur⁴ dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādi, pīncipēs pīodūcī. Ipse in mūnītōne pīō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs pīodūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēdītur, arma pīociuntur. Reservātīs Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercitū capita singula pīaedae nōmine dīstribuit.

CĀESAR RESTORES PEACE IN GAUL AND DISTRIBUTES
HIS FORCES THROUGHOUT THE COUNTRY

90. Hīs rēbus cōfēctīs in Aeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit.

dēleō, 2. lēvī, lētus, *destroy*

vīvus, a, um, *living*

recuperō, 1, *recover*

¹ quod: *so that* (literally, *as to which*). ² necessitātum: English derivative? ³ cēdendum: impersonal. ⁴ mittuntur, etc.: observe the inversion of the usual order of words.

Plutarch says that Vercingetorix put on his finest armor and upon his war horse came forth from the town. After riding around Cāesar several times as he sat in his tribunal, he dismounted, took off his armor, and seated himself at Cāesar's feet. He sat there in silence till Cāesar ordered him to be removed and kept for his triumph in Rome. There he was led in the triumphal procession and afterwards put to death in prison.

Captīvōrum circiter vīgintī mīlia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. Titum Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic Mārcum Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. Gāium Fabium lēgātum et Lūcium Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā fīnitīmīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. Gāium Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, Titum Sextium in Biturīgēs, Gāium Caninum Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Quīntum Tullium Cicerōnem et Pūblīum Sulpiciū Cavillōnī¹ et Matiscōne¹ in Aeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāiae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit. Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicatiō redditur.

attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, assign

supplicatiō, ūnis, f., thanksgiving

¹ Cavillōnī, Matiscōne: *Cavillonum* and *Matisco*, towns of the Aeduī.

ANNOUNCEMENTS

TWO LATIN PLAYS

By SUSAN PAXSON, Teacher of Latin and German, High School, Omaha, Nebr.

12mo, cloth, xii + 39 pages, 45 cents

¶ "A Roman School" and "A Roman Wedding" are the only dramatizations in Latin which are in any way suitable for reproduction in the high schools. They were written by the author for the purpose of creating a new interest in the study of the classics among secondary pupils, and, as given already in several schools, have proved an effective stimulus to the class work.

¶ The plays give in turn a picture of school life in the days of Caesar and Cicero, and again, of a high-class Roman wedding in the same period.

¶ The greatest care has been taken to make the detail authentic and the descriptions true to life. The diction is accurately classic, and there is plenty of humor and action.

¶ As a means of producing a genuine appreciation of Roman life and customs, and of making real the character of Latin literature, the book has unusual educational value.

RECENT LATIN BOOKS

LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

By BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE, Professor of Latin in Michigan State Normal College.
12mo, cloth, 348 pages, illustrated, with four colored plates and map in color, \$1.50.

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN SYNTAX

By CHARLES CHRISTOPHER MIEROW, Instructor in Classics in Princeton University.
12mo, cloth, 98 pages, 90 cents.

LIVE ISSUES IN CLASSICAL STUDY

By KARL POMEROY HARRINGTON, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn. 12mo, cloth, 76 pages, 75 cents.

D'OOGE'S LATIN COMPOSITIONS

By BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE
Professor of Latin in the Michigan State Normal School, Ypsilanti

LATIN COMPOSITION FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS

12mo, cloth, 131 + 190 pages, \$1.00

PART I, BASED ON CÆSAR'S "GALLIC WAR." 12mo, cloth, xii + 131 pages, 50 cents
PARTS II AND III, BASED ON "CICERO." 12mo, cloth, 190 pages, 60 cents

PART I comprises the first volume and is to be used in connection with the first four books of "Cæsar" during the second year.

Parts II and III form the second volume. Part II, intended to accompany the work of the third year, is based on Cicero's "Manilian Law," "Catiline," I-IV, and the "Archias." Part III, designed for a review of syntax in the fourth year, consists of thirty-five lessons of miscellaneous sentences based on "Cæsar" and "Cicero," and is accompanied by a special Vocabulary.

LATIN COMPOSITION TO ACCOMPANY GREENOUGH, D'OOGE, AND DANIELL'S SECOND YEAR LATIN

12mo, cloth, x + 131 pages, 50 cents

THIS book has been especially prepared for schools using Greenough, D'oge, and Daniell's "Second Year Latin." With the second volume of D'oge's "Latin Composition for Secondary Schools" it forms a complete course for schools that precede their work in "Cicero" with "Second Year Latin" rather than with the first four books of "Cæsar."

LATIN COMPOSITION TABLET

8vo tablet, 60 pages, 15 cents

THIS composition tablet includes a system of signs for the correction of exercises. The plan lessens the labor of the teacher and gives the pupil an opportunity for more than the usual amount of Latin writing.

Date Due

BOSTON UNIVERSITY



1 1719 02753 7697

